

FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

A New York limited liability company

1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350

Uniondale, New York 11556

Tel: 516-279-2300

www.libc.com

franchise@libc.com



The franchise offered is for a quick-serve “Long Island Bagel Café” restaurant offering a menu that specializes in hand rolled, kettle cooked and baked bagels, made fresh daily, as well as a breakfast menu, lunch menu, and beverages. A Long Island Bagel Café restaurant operates using the franchisor’s proprietary recipes, formulae, techniques, trade dress, trademarks and logos.

The total investment necessary to begin operation of a Long Island Bagel Café franchise is \$585,200 to \$882,100. This includes between \$41,600 and \$47,500 that must be paid to us or our affiliates.

The total investment necessary to begin the operation of a Long Island Bagel Café multi-unit development business ranges from \$612,700 to \$909,600, for a required minimum of 3 Long Island Bagel Café outlets to be developed. This includes a minimum of \$62,500 that must be paid to us or our affiliates.

This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of your franchise agreement and other information in plain English. Read this disclosure document and all accompanying agreements carefully. You must receive the disclosure document at least 14 calendar days before you sign a binding agreement with or make any payment to the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. **Note, however, that no government agency has verified the information contained in this document.**

You may wish to receive your disclosure document in another format that is more convenient for you. To discuss the availability of disclosures in different formats, contact Randy Narod at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556, and 516-279-2300.

The terms of your contract will govern your franchise relationship. Don’t rely on the disclosure document alone to understand your contract. Read all of your contract carefully. Show your contract and this disclosure document to an advisor, like a lawyer or an accountant.

Buying a franchise is a complex investment. The information in this disclosure document can help you make up your mind. More information on franchising, such as “*A Consumer’s Guide to Buying a Franchise*,” which can help you understand how to use this disclosure document, is available from the Federal Trade Commission. You can contact the FTC at 1-877-FTC-HELP or by writing to the FTC at 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20580. You can also visit the FTC’s home page at www.ftc.gov for additional information. Call your state agency or visit your public library for other sources of information on franchising.

There may also be laws on franchising in your state. Ask your state agencies about them.

Issuance Date: April 26, 2022

How to Use This Franchise Disclosure Document

Here are some questions you may be asking about buying a franchise and tips on how to find more information:

QUESTION	WHERE TO FIND INFORMATION
How much can I earn?	Item 19 may give you information about outlet sales, costs, profits or losses. You should also try to obtain this information from others, like current and former franchisees. You can find their names and contact information in Item 20 or Exhibit F.
How much will I need to invest?	Items 5 and 6 list fees you will be paying to the franchisor or at the franchisor's direction. Item 7 lists the initial investment to open. Item 8 describes the suppliers you must use.
Does the franchisor have the financial ability to provide support to my business?	Item 21 or Exhibit D includes financial statements. Review these statements carefully.
Is the franchise system stable, growing, or shrinking?	Item 20 summarizes the recent history of the number of company-owned and franchised outlets.
Will my business be the only Long Island Bagel Café business in my area?	Item 12 and the "territory" provisions in the franchise agreement describe whether the franchisor and other franchisees can compete with you.
Does the franchisor have a troubled legal history?	Items 3 and 4 tell you whether the franchisor or its management have been involved in material litigation or bankruptcy proceedings.
What's it like to be Long Island Bagel Café franchisee?	Item 20 or Exhibit F lists current and former franchisees. You can contact them to ask about their experiences.
What else should I know?	These questions are only a few things you should look for. Review all 23 Items and all Exhibits in this disclosure document to better understand this franchise opportunity. See the table of contents.

What You Need To Know About Franchising *Generally*

Continuing responsibility to pay fees. You may have to pay royalties and other fees even if you are losing money.

Business model can change. The franchise agreement may allow the franchisor to change its manuals and business model without your consent. These changes may require you to make additional investments in your franchise business or may harm your franchise business.

Supplier restrictions. You may have to buy or lease items from the franchisor or a limited group of suppliers the franchisor designates. These items may be more expensive than similar items you could buy on your own.

Operating restrictions. The franchise agreement may prohibit you from operating a similar business during the term of the franchise. There are usually other restrictions. Some examples may include controlling your location, your access to customers, what you sell, how you market, and your hours of operation.

Competition from franchisor. Even if the franchise agreement grants you a territory, the franchisor may have the right to compete with you in your territory.

Renewal. Your franchise agreement may not permit you to renew. Even if it does, you may have to sign a new agreement with different terms and conditions in order to continue to operate your franchise business.

When your franchise ends. The franchise agreement may prohibit you from operating a similar business after your franchise ends even if you still have obligations to your landlord or other creditors.

Some States Require Registration

Your state may have a franchise law, or other law, that requires franchisors to register before offering or selling franchises in the state. Registration does not mean that the state recommends the franchise or has verified the information in this document. To find out if your state has a registration requirement, or to contact your state, use the agency information in Exhibit A.

Your state also may have laws that require special disclosures or amendments be made to your franchise agreement. If so, you should check the State Specific Addenda. See the Table of Contents for the location of the State Specific Addenda.

Special Risks to Consider About *This Franchise*

Certain states require that the following risk(s) be highlighted:

1. **Out-of-state dispute resolution.** The franchise agreement and multi-unit development agreement require you to resolve disputes with us by mediation and litigation only in New York. Out-of-state mediation and litigation may force you to accept a less favorable settlement for disputes. It may also cost you more to mediate and litigate with us in New York than in your own state.
2. **Spouse Liability.** Your spouse must sign a document that makes your spouse liable for your financial obligations under the franchise agreement, even though your spouse has no ownership interest in the business. This guarantee will place both your and your spouse's personal and marital assets, perhaps including your house, at risk if your franchise fails.
3. **Short Operating History.** The franchisor is at an early stage of development and has limited operating history. This franchise is likely to be a riskier investment than a franchise in a system with a longer operating history.
4. **Financial Condition.** The Franchisor's financial condition as reflected in its financial statements (see Item 21) calls into question the Franchisor's financial ability to provide services and support to you.

Certain states may require other risks to be highlighted. Check the "State Specific Addenda" (if any) to see whether your state requires other risks to be highlighted.

Table Of Contents

ITEM 1: THE FRANCHISOR, AND ANY PARENTS, PREDECESSORS AND AFFILIATES	6
ITEM 2: BUSINESS EXPERIENCE	9
ITEM 3: LITIGATION.....	10
ITEM 4: BANKRUPTCY	10
ITEM 5: INITIAL FEES.....	11
ITEM 6: OTHER FEES	11
ITEM 7: ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT	16
ITEM 8: RESTRICTIONS ON SOURCES OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES.....	19
ITEM 9: FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS	23
ITEM 10: FINANCING	24
ITEM 11: FRANCHISOR'S ASSISTANCE, ADVERTISING, COMPUTER SYSTEMS AND TRAINING ..	24
ITEM 12: TERRITORY	33
ITEM 13: TRADEMARKS	37
ITEM 14: PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION	39
ITEM 15: OBLIGATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ACTUAL OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISE BUSINESS.....	40
ITEM 16: RESTRICTIONS ON WHAT THE FRANCHISEE MAY SELL.....	41
ITEM 17: RENEWAL, TERMINATION, TRANSFER AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION.....	41
ITEM 18: PUBLIC FIGURES	47
ITEM 19: FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE REPRESENTATIONS	47
ITEM 20: OUTLETS AND FRANCHISEE INFORMATION	49
ITEM 21: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	51
ITEM 22: CONTRACTS	51
ITEM 23: RECEIPTS	52
STATE ADMINISTRATORS/AGENTS FOR SERVICE OF PROCESS	53
FRANCHISE AGREEMENT.....	55
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	57
TABLE OF CONTENTS OF CONFIDENTIAL OPERATIONS MANUAL	58
FRANCHISEES.....	59
STATE EFFECTIVE DATES	63

EXHIBITS

- A – List of State Franchise Administrators and Agents for Service of Process
- B – Franchise Agreement
- C – Multi-Unit Development Agreement
- D – Financial Statements of LIBC Franchise, LLC
- E – Operations Manual Table of Contents
- F – Outlets as of the date of this Disclosure Document
- G – State Addenda
- H – Receipt

ITEM 1: THE FRANCHISOR, AND ANY PARENTS, PREDECESSORS AND AFFILIATES

The Franchisor

LIBC Franchise LLC (referred to in this Disclosure Document as “Long Island Bagel Café” “we,” “us,” or “our” and where the context requires also includes our affiliates) was formed as a New York limited liability company on March 11, 2019. Our headquarters is at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556. We do business under our corporate name and the Marks as described below. In this Disclosure Document, we refer to the person or entity that will be signing the Franchise Agreement (defined below) as “you,” “your,” or “Franchisee,” which includes all franchise owners and partners, if you are a corporation, partnership or other entity.

We do not own or operate a business of the type being franchised. We have not offered franchises in any other line of business and we do not engage in any other business activity. We have offered franchises since May 18, 2019.

Our agents for service of process are listed in Exhibit A.

Our Parents, Predecessors and Affiliates

We have no parent or predecessor. We have the following affiliates. None of our affiliates has ever offered franchises in this or any other line of business.

LIBC Distributors LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on March 20, 2019 and headquartered at our address (“Supply Affiliate”). Our Supply Affiliate does not own or operate a business of the type being franchised. Our Supply Affiliate is the designated supplier of certain proprietary products you must purchase, including bagels, salads, and branded paper goods.

Long Island Bagel Café, LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on September 27, 2007 and headquartered at our address. This affiliate does not own or operate a business of the type being franchised and is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns the Proprietary Marks, which it has licensed to us so that we may sublicense them to our franchisees.

Oceanside Original Bagels, Inc., a New York corporation formed on November 10, 1999 and headquartered at 3452 Long Beach Road, Oceanside, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since May 2001.

Bellmore Bagel Gourmet, Inc., a New York corporation formed on June 25, 2003 and headquartered at 550-552 Jerusalem Avenue, Bellmore, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since July 2003.

Long Beach Bagel, Inc., a New York corporation formed on May 12, 2006 and headquartered at 757 East Park Avenue, Long Beach, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since November 2006.

Glen Cove Gourmet Bagels & Deli Inc., a New York corporation formed on June 23, 2006 and headquartered at 89 Forest Avenue, Glen Cove, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since September 2006.

Nesconset Bagel Café LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on October 26, 2007 and headquartered at 248 Smithtown Blvd., Suite 9, Nesconset, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since February 2010.

2162 Grand Ave. Commissary Associates LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on July 16, 2013 and headquartered at 2162 Grand Avenue, Baldwin, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since March 2013. The Café operated by this affiliate is not representative of a typical Café, because it has a very small footprint, no customer seating and very limited parking. This affiliate also operates a commissary that supplies bagels to other Long Island Bagel Cafés operated by our affiliates.

2162 Grand, LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on June 14, 2012 owns the real property located at 2162 Grand Avenue, Baldwin, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease.

Stony Brook Bagel Café, LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on March 18, 2014 and headquartered at 2310 Nesconset Highway, Stony Brook, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since September 2014.

Mineola Bagel Café LLC, a New York limited liability company formed on December 7, 2016 and headquartered at 175 East Jericho Turnpike, Mineola, New York. This affiliate is not an approved supplier of any product or service you must purchase or lease. This affiliate owns and operates one business of the type being franchised which has been in operation since September 2017.

Description of Franchise

We offer franchises for the right to establish and operate a quick-serve “Long Island Bagel Café” restaurant offering a menu that specializes in hand rolled, kettle cooked and baked bagels, made fresh daily, as well as a breakfast menu, lunch menu, and beverages (“Café” or “Franchised Business”). Cafés operate under the trade names and marks “Long Island Bagel Café”, “LIBC”, and the additional principal service marks, trademarks, trade names, logos, emblems and indicia of origin identified in Item 13. These principal marks and all other marks which may be designated by us in the future in writing for use with the System (defined below) are referred to in this Disclosure Document as the “Marks” or “Proprietary Marks”.

Long Island Bagel Cafés are operated under the Marks and the System in accordance with the terms of the Franchise Agreement. Long Island Bagel Cafés are typically located in strip centers, retail locations, or as free-standing locations with easy access and ample parking and will require between 1,500 and 3,000 square feet of space. Each Café will offer dine-in, take out, and catering services.

The Cafés are established and operated under a comprehensive and unique system (the “System”). The System includes distinctive signage, interior and exterior design, décor and color scheme; special recipes and menu items, including proprietary products and ingredients; uniform standards, specifications, and procedures for operations; quality and uniformity of products and services offered; inventory, management and financial control procedures (including point of sales and tracking systems); training and assistance; and advertising and promotional programs; all of which we may change, improve, and further develop, in our discretion. Certain aspects of the System are more fully described in this Disclosure Document and the Confidential Operations Manual (the “Manual”), which you should expect to evolve over time, that is loaned to you as our Franchisee.

Franchise Agreement

We offer the right to establish and operate a Café under the terms of a single unit franchise agreement (the “Franchise Agreement”). You may or may not be granted a Designated Territory, depending on the type of location for your Café. Our current form of Franchise Agreement is Exhibit B to this Disclosure Document. You may be an individual, corporation, partnership or other form of legal entity. Under the Franchise Agreement, certain parties are characterized as Franchisee’s Principals (referred to in this Disclosure Document as “your Principals”). The Franchise Agreement is signed by us, by you, and by those of your Principals whom we designate as Principals. In most instances, we will designate your principal equity owners, executive officers, and certain affiliated entities as Principals. By signing the Franchise Agreement, your Principals agree to be individually bound by certain obligations in the Franchise Agreement, including covenants concerning confidentiality and non-competition, and to personally guarantee your performance under the Franchise Agreement. Depending on the type of business activities in which you or your Principals may be involved, we may require you or your Principals to sign additional confidentiality and non-competition agreements.

You must designate a general manager who will be the main individual responsible for your business (“General Manager”). We recommend, but do not require, that you or one of your Principals act as the General Manager. The General Manager must sign covenants to maintain the confidentiality of information he/she learns while employed as your General Manager, and your General Manager must sign non-competition covenants.

Multi-Unit Development Agreement

In certain circumstances, we will offer the right to enter into a Multi-Unit Development Agreement in the form attached as Exhibit C to this Disclosure Document (the “Multi-Unit Development Agreement”) to develop multiple franchised Cafés to be located within a specifically described geographic area (the “Development Area”). We will determine the Development Area before you sign the Multi-Unit Development Agreement and it will be included in the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. You must establish at least three Cafés within the Development Area according to a minimum performance schedule, and you must sign a separate Franchise Agreement for each Café established under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement.

The Franchise Agreement for the first Café developed under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement will be in the form attached as Exhibit B to this Disclosure Document, and we expect that you will sign the first Franchise Agreement at the same time you sign the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. For each additional Café developed under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, you must sign the then-current form of Franchise Agreement that we are offering to new franchisees which may differ from the current Franchise Agreement included with this Disclosure Document. The size of the Development Area will vary depending upon local market conditions and the number of Cafés to be developed.

Market and Competition

The market for quick-serve restaurants in general is well developed and intensely competitive. You will serve the general public and will compete with a variety of businesses, including locally owned to regional, national and chain restaurants, some of which may be franchise systems. We may establish other Cafés in your area (if permitted under the Franchise Agreement) and/or sell or license others to sell products in your area. Also, we may sell products through the internet, toll-free telephone numbers, catalogs, or other similar means of distribution to customers at any location, which may be located in your area. See Items 12 and 16 for a description of your permitted activities and your rights, and our permitted and restricted activities and rights.

Industry Regulations

The restaurant industry is heavily regulated. A wide variety of Federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations have been enacted that may impact the operation of your Café, and may include those which: (a) establish general standards, zoning, permitting restrictions and requirements and other specifications and requirements for the location, construction, design, maintenance and operation of the Café's premises; (b) set standards pertaining to employee health and safety; (c) regulate matters affecting the health, safety and welfare of your customers, such as general health and sanitation requirements for restaurants and laws and regulations relating to access by persons with disabilities; employee practices concerning the storage, handling, cooking and preparation of food; restrictions on smoking; availability of and requirements for public accommodations and requirements for fire safety and general emergency preparedness; (d) regulate food and liquor service operations including establishing requirements for food identification and labeling; and (e) regulate advertisements. State and local agencies inspect restaurants to ensure that they comply with these laws and regulations. You should investigate whether there are regulations and requirements that may apply in the geographic area in which you are interested in locating your Café and you should consider both their effect and costs of compliance.

Many of the laws, rules and regulations that apply to business generally, such as the Americans With Disabilities Act, Federal Wage and Hour Laws and the Occupational Safety and Health Act, also apply to restaurants. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration, the U.S. Department of Agriculture and state and local health departments administer and enforce laws and regulations that govern food preparation and service and restaurant sanitary conditions. The federal Clean Air Act and various implementing state laws require certain state and local areas to meet national air quality standards limiting emissions of ozone, carbon monoxide and particulate matters, including caps on emissions from commercial food preparation. Some areas have also adopted or are considering proposals that would regulate indoor air quality.

The Nutrition Labeling and Education Act (NLEA) sets regulations for food labeling, including nutritional label standards, nutrient content claims, and health claims. NLEA applies to virtually all foods in the food supply, including food served and sold in restaurants. While NLEA specifies a number of exemptions for restaurants, there are many instances where a nutritional label is required. The Food and Drug Administration's *Nutritional Labeling Guide for Restaurants and Other Retail Establishments* provides answers to commonly asked questions regarding the application of NLEA.

You must identify, investigate, satisfy and comply with all laws, ordinances and/or regulations applicable to your Café, including employment, workers' compensation, insurance, corporate, tax, public health and similar laws and regulations, because they vary from place to place, can change over time and may affect the operation of your Café. You should independently research and review the legal requirements of the food services industry with your own attorney before you sign any binding documents or make any investments.

Each of your managers and other employees we designate must be ServSafe (or similar) certified.

ITEM 2: BUSINESS EXPERIENCE

Chief Executive Officer – Randy Narod

Mr. Narod has been our Chief Executive Officer since our inception in March 2019. Mr. Narod founded the Long Island Bagel Café concept in Oceanside, New York, in May 2001 and has since worked exclusively developing and growing the brand. He has served as Chief Executive Officer of all of our affiliate-owned outlets, located on Long Island, New York, from May 2001 through present.

Chief Operating Officer – Joseph Anzalone

Mr. Anzalone has been our Chief Operating Officer since our inception in March 2019. He has served as Chief Operating Officer of all of our affiliate-owned outlets, located on Long Island, New York, from May 2001 through present.

Chief Business Development Officer- Erica Benedetto

Erica Lee-Benedetto has been our Chief Business Development Officer since our inception in March 2019. She is responsible for all new business ventures, vetting locations, maintaining open lines of communication between corporate and franchise owner/operators. She also works alongside the marketing department to launch tv, digital, print and social media campaigns ensuring the success of each store. Erica was previously the Chief Operating Officer of Professional Biographies from 2012-2015 and Marquis WW Ventures LLC from 2016 to 2019. Erica has her BA from Yale University.

Chief Financial Officer – Michael Tiseo

Mr. Tiseo has been our Chief Financial Officer since our inception in March 2019. He has served as Chief Financial Officer of all of our affiliate-owned outlets, located on Long Island, New York, from March 2012 through present.

Director of Operations – Joe Feldman

Mr. Feldman has been our Director of Operations since our inception in March 2019. He has been Manager of our affiliate-owned Long Island Bagel Café, located in Long Beach, New York, from April 2014 through present.

Director of Franchisee Field Support – Michael Durr

Mr. Durr has been our Director of Franchisee Field Support since our inception in March 2019. He is currently the Managing Partner of our affiliate-owned Long Island Bagel Café located in Stony Brook, New York. From December 2015 to July 2018 he was General Manager for Burger Fi restaurants located in Brooklyn, New York, Commack, New York and Woodbury, New York. Mr. Durr was Production Chef for Stony Brook University, in Stony Brook, New York, from August 2014 to December 2015. From November 2012 to August 2014, he was Chef Supervisor for New York Institute of Technology, located in Old Westbury, New York.

Director of Food Services – Juan Reyes

Mr. Reyes has been our Director of Food Services since our inception in March 2019. He has served as Director of Food Service of all of our affiliate-owned outlets, located on Long Island, New York, from September 2007 through present.

ITEM 3: LITIGATION

No litigation is required to be disclosed in this Item.

ITEM 4: BANKRUPTCY

No bankruptcy information is required to be disclosed in this Item.

ITEM 5: INITIAL FEES

Franchise Agreement: You must pay us an initial franchise fee of \$35,000 for the right to establish a single Long Island Bagel Café under a Franchise Agreement. This payment is fully earned by us and due in lump sum when you sign the Franchise Agreement. The Initial Franchise Fee is not refundable under any circumstance.

From time to time, we may offer special incentive programs as part of our franchise development activities. We reserve the right to offer, modify or withdraw any incentive program without notice to you. We currently offer an incentive to qualified United States veterans whereby the initial franchise fee for the first Café only will be reduced by \$5,000.

Initial Inventory: You must purchase from our Supply Affiliate your initial inventory of bagels, salads (including chicken salad, tuna salad and egg salad), branded paper goods (including coffee cups, paper bags, napkins, food containers, food labels, and cellophane wrap). We estimate that the cost of your initial inventory of these items will be between \$5,000 and \$10,000. This amount is not refundable.

Point of Sale System: You must purchase the required point of sale system from us. We estimate that the point of sale system will cost between \$1,600 and \$2,500. This amount is not refundable.

Multi-Unit Development Agreement: If you qualify to develop and operate multiple Long Island Bagel Cafés, then you will pay to us a development fee equal to 100% of the initial franchise fee for the first Café to be developed, plus 50% of the reduced initial franchise fee for each additional Café you commit to develop under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. For your first Café, the initial franchise fee is \$35,000. For your second Café, the initial franchise fee will be \$30,000. For your third Café, the initial franchise fee will be \$25,000. For your fourth or later Café, the initial franchise fee will be \$20,000. Only multi-unit developers are entitled to the reduced initial franchise fee for additional Cafés.

If you commit to develop three Cafés, the development fee is calculated as $\$35,000 + \$15,000 + \$12,500 = \$62,500$. The development fee is imposed uniformly on all multi-unit developers, is fully earned by us and due in lump sum when you sign the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. The development fee is not refundable under any circumstance.

When you sign the Franchise Agreement for the first Café to be developed, which we expect will be signed at the same time the Multi-Unit Development Agreement is signed, we will apply a portion of the reservation fee to pay the initial franchise fee for the first Café in full. For each additional Café you will develop under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, we will apply a pro rata portion of the reservation fee toward the initial franchise fee and the balance of the initial franchise fee is payable in a lump sum when you sign the Franchise Agreement for that Café.

There are no other purchases from or payments to us or any affiliate of ours that you must make before your Café opens for business.

ITEM 6: OTHER FEES

(1) Fees ⁽¹⁾	(2) Amount	(3) Due Date	(4) Remarks
Royalty Fee ⁽²⁾	5% of Gross Sales	Payable on Wednesday of each week (or the next business day if any Wednesday is not a business day)	Royalty Fees are calculated based on Gross Sales for the previous week ending Sunday. Amounts due will be withdrawn by EFT from your designated bank account

(1) Fees ⁽¹⁾	(2) Amount	(3) Due Date	(4) Remarks
Brand Development Fee	1% of Gross Sales	Payable together with the Royalty Fee	The Brand Development Fund is described in Item 11
Local Advertising	2% of Gross Sales	Must be spent monthly	Payable to your local advertising suppliers. Any advertising you wish to use must first be approved by us
Cooperative Advertising ⁽³⁾	As determined by the members	As determined by the members	If an advertising cooperative is formed for your area, you must join the cooperative. Any money you contribute to a cooperative will count toward your local advertising requirement
Initial Training (For New or Replacement Employees)	Our then-current daily, per person training fee, plus expenses Current daily, per person training fee = \$250	Before training	The cost to train up to five people is included in the initial franchise fee. If you request that we provide our initial training program to any additional employees, or to new or replacement employees during the term of your Franchise Agreement, you must pay our training fee as well as the trainees' expenses, including travel, lodging, meals and wages
Additional On-Site Training / Remedial Training	Our then-current per diem rate per trainer, plus expenses Current per diem rate = \$250	When billed	If you request that we provide additional training at your Café, or if as the result of an inspection or quality assurance audit we believe that remedial training is necessary, you must pay our daily fee for each trainer we send to your Café, and you must reimburse each trainer's expenses, including travel, lodging and meals
Insufficient Funds Fee	\$50 per occurrence	On demand, if incurred	Payable if there are insufficient funds in your account to pay fees due to us. If you incur three insufficient funds fees in any 12-month period, we have the right to terminate your Franchise Agreement

(1) Fees ⁽¹⁾	(2) Amount	(3) Due Date	(4) Remarks
Interest	18% per annum or the highest interest rate allowed by applicable law, whichever is less	On demand	Interest may be charged on all overdue amounts. Interest accrues from the original due date until payment is received in full
Audit Fee	Cost of audit (estimated to be between \$1,000 and \$5,000)	When billed	Payable only if we find, after an audit, that you have understated any amount you owe to us or Gross Sales by 2% or more. You must also pay the understated amount plus interest and the late fee
Prohibited Product or Service Fine	\$250 per day of use of unauthorized products or services	If incurred	In addition to other remedies available to us
Transfer Fee – Franchise Agreement	\$15,000	With request for approval of transfer	No fee charged for a one-time transfer from individual(s) to a corporate entity formed for convenience of ownership of the franchise
Transfer Fee – Multi-Unit Development Agreement	\$2,500 per remaining Development Right	With request for approval of transfer	No fee charged for a one-time transfer from individual(s) to a corporate entity formed for convenience of ownership of the franchise. This fee is in addition to the transfer fee under the Franchise Agreement for any existing Cafés that are also being transferred to the same buyer
Renewal Fee (Franchise Agreement)	50% of our then-current initial franchise fee for a single unit franchise	Upon renewal of the Franchise Agreement	
Relocation Fee	Reimbursement of our expenses, up to \$5,000	Upon our approval of your relocation request	If you request our permission to relocate your Café
Liquidated Damages	See footnote 4		
Costs and Attorneys' Fees	Will vary under circumstances	On demand	If you default under your agreement, you must reimburse us for the expenses we incur (such as attorneys' fees) in enforcing or terminating the agreement

(1) Fees ⁽¹⁾	(2) Amount	(3) Due Date	(4) Remarks
Indemnification	Will vary under circumstances	On demand	You must reimburse us for the costs we incur if we are sued or held liable for claims that arise from your operation of the Franchised Business or for costs associated with defending claims that you used the Marks in an unauthorized manner
Repair, Maintenance, and Remodeling/Redecorating	Will vary under circumstances	As incurred	Payable to approved suppliers. You must regularly clean and maintain your Café and its equipment. We may require you to remodel or redecorate your Café to meet our then-current image for all Long Island Bagel Cafés. We will not require you to remodel or redecorate your Café more frequently than every 10 years. If you transfer your franchise, we may require the transferee to remodel or redecorate the Café to meet our then-current standards
ServSafe (or similar) Certification	\$150 per person or the then-current market rate	As needed	Each of your managers and other employees we designate must be ServSafe or similarly certified. Payable to an approved supplier
Insurance Premiums	Reimbursement of our costs, plus 10% administrative fee	On demand	If you do not maintain the required insurance coverages, we have the right (but not the obligation) to obtain insurance on your behalf
Management Fee	8% of Gross Sales, plus expenses	If incurred	We may step in and manage your Café in certain circumstances, such as death, disability or prolonged absence. We will charge a management fee if we manage your Café, and you must reimburse our expenses

(1) Fees ⁽¹⁾	(2) Amount	(3) Due Date	(4) Remarks
POS System Fee	\$200	Payable on the first Wednesday of each month, together with the Royalty Fee	We collect this fee on behalf of the approved supplier. This fee includes POS software maintenance and support, on-line ordering for your customers, and gift card and loyalty card programs
Product Purchases	Will vary as inventory is used	As incurred	You must buy your continuing inventory of bagels, salads and branded paper goods from our Supply Affiliate

Notes:

1. All fees described in this Item 6 are non-refundable. Except as otherwise indicated in the preceding chart, we uniformly impose all fees and expenses listed and you must pay them to us.

2. For the purposes of determining the Royalty Fees to be paid under the Franchise Agreement, “Gross Sales” means the total selling price of all services and products and all income of every other kind and nature related to the Café, whether for cash or credit and regardless of collection in the case of credit. If a cash shortage occurs, the amount of Gross Sales will be determined based on the records of the point of sale system and any cash shortage will not be considered in the determination. Gross Sales expressly excludes taxes collected from your customers and paid to the appropriate taxing authority and customer refunds or adjustments.

By Tuesday of each week, you must provide us with a report of Gross Sales for the previous week ending Sunday. The Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee will be withdrawn from your designated bank account by electronic funds transfer (“EFT”) on Wednesday of each week, or the next business day if any Wednesday is not a business day. If you do not report the Café’s Gross Sales, we may debit your account for 120% of the last Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee that we debited. If the fees we debit are less than the fees you actually owe us, once we have been able to determine the true and correct Gross Sales, we will debit your account for the balance on a day we specify. If the fees we debit are greater than the fees you actually owe us, we will credit the excess against the amount we otherwise would debit from your account during the following week.

If any state imposes a sales or other tax on the Royalty Fees, then we have the right to collect this tax from you.

3. Cooperatives will include all Cafés in a designated geographic area, whether owned by us, our affiliates or our franchisees. Each Café has one vote in the cooperative, but no one Café or commonly controlled group of Cafés will have more than 25% of the total vote. No cooperatives have been established as of the date of this Disclosure Document.

4. If we terminate your Franchise Agreement for cause, you must pay us within 15 days after the effective date of termination liquidated damages equal to the average monthly Royalty Fees you paid or owed to us during the 12 months of operation preceding the effective date of termination multiplied by (a) 24 (being the number of months in two full years), or (b) the number of months remaining in the Agreement had it not been terminated, whichever is lower.

ITEM 7: ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT

YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT

(1) Type of Expenditure	(2) Amount	(3) Method of Payment	(4) When Due	(5) To Whom Payment is to be Made
Initial Franchise Fee (1)	\$35,000	Lump Sum	On signing Franchise Agreement	Us
Leasehold Improvements (2)	\$225,000 to \$325,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Independent Contractors
Security Deposits (3)	\$4,000 to \$30,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Landlord, Utility Companies
Furniture, Fixtures and Equipment (4)	\$225,000 to \$300,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Approved Suppliers
All Signage (5)	\$15,000 to \$20,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Approved Suppliers
Initial Inventory (Proprietary Items) (6)	\$5,000 to \$10,000	As Arranged	As Incurred	Our Supply Affiliate
Initial Inventory (6)	\$5,000	As Arranged	As Incurred	Approved Suppliers
Blueprints and Plans (7)	\$10,000 to \$20,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Architect or Engineer
Computer/POS System (8)	\$1,600 to \$2,500	As Arranged	As Arranged	Us
Security System, Televisions, etc.	\$4,000 to \$8,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Approved Suppliers
Travel, lodging and meals for initial training (9)	\$1,000 to \$10,000	As Arranged	As Incurred	Airlines, Hotels and Cafés
Insurance – 3 Months (10)	\$3,000 to \$6,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Insurance Companies
Grand Opening Advertising (11)	\$10,000 to \$15,000	As Arranged	First 90 Days of Operation	Suppliers
Licenses and Permits (12)	\$2,000 to \$5,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Government Agencies
Professional Fees (13)	\$2,000 to \$10,000	As Arranged	As Arranged	Accountant; Attorney
Additional Funds – 3 Months (14)	\$37,600 to \$80,600	As Arranged	As Arranged	Various

(1) Type of Expenditure	(2) Amount	(3) Method of Payment	(4) When Due	(5) To Whom Payment is to be Made
TOTAL ⁽¹⁵⁾	\$585,200 to \$882,100			

In general, none of the expenses listed in the above chart are refundable, except any security deposits you must make may be refundable. We do not finance any portion of your initial investment. All of our estimates assume that you will purchase the required items. Your costs may be lower if you choose to lease some items.

Notes:

1. **Initial Franchise Fee.** This fee is discussed in Item 5.
2. **Leasehold Improvements.** Your Café must be in a strip center, retail location, or a free-standing location with easy access and ample parking, and you will need approximately 1,500 to 3,000 square feet. The cost of leasehold improvements will vary depending on many factors, including: (a) the size and configuration of the premises; (b) pre-construction costs (including demolition of existing walls and removal of existing improvements and fixtures); and (c) cost of materials and labor, which may vary based on geography and location or whether you must use union labor for the build-out of your Café. These amounts may vary substantially based on local conditions, including the availability and prices of labor and materials. These costs may also vary depending on whether certain of these costs will be incurred by the landlord or through landlord tenant improvement contributions, and the condition of the space before you take possession of the premises. The low end of our estimate assumes that you have leased space that previously operated as a restaurant and that you will convert to a Long Island Bagel Café. The high end of our estimate assumes that you have leased a “vanilla box” space and that more improvements are required. Our estimate does not include any tenant improvement allowance that you may negotiate.

If you choose to purchase real property on which to build your Café, your initial investment will probably be higher than what we estimate above. If you purchase real property, we cannot estimate how this purchase will affect your total initial investment.

3. **Security Deposits.** Our estimate assumes you will need to provide one month to three months of rent as a security deposit to your landlord, and you may need to provide security deposits for your utilities (such as gas, water and/or electric). Some landlords vary the base rental rate and charge rent based on a percentage of your Café’s sales. In addition to base rent, your lease may require you to pay common area maintenance charges (“CAM Charges”) for your pro rata share of the real estate taxes, insurance, and other charges. The actual amount you pay under the lease will vary depending on the size of the Café, the types of charges that are allocated to tenants under the lease, your ability to negotiate with landlords and the prevailing rental rates in the geographic region.

4. **Furniture, Fixtures and Equipment.** The furniture and fixtures you will need for your Café include: tables, chairs, artwork, and décor items. The equipment you will need includes bagel oven, refrigerated case, beverage case, kettle, griddle, exhaust hoods, toaster, refrigerator, freezer, prep refrigerators, work tables, small wares, and other typical items necessary to outfit and operate a café.

5. **Signage.** These amounts represent your cost for interior and exterior signage, including menu boards. Your landlord or your local ordinances may have different restrictions it places on interior and exterior signage which may affect your costs.

6. **Initial Inventory.** These amounts represent your initial inventory of food, beverage supplies, paper products, and cleaning materials and supplies.

7. **Blueprints and Plans.** You must obtain construction plans for the build-out of your Café according to our specifications. We reserve the right to designate and/or approve of the designer and/or architect you use.

8. **Computer/POS System; Televisions; Security System, etc.** You must purchase or lease the computer/point of sale system that we designate. Additional information regarding the required computer system is included in Item 11. You must also purchase televisions, sound system, and security system, including alarm and cameras.

9. **Travel, Lodging and Meals for Initial Training.** These estimates include only your out-of-pocket costs associated with attending our initial training program, including travel, lodging, meals and applicable wages for five trainees. These amounts do not include any fees or expenses for training any other personnel. Your costs may vary depending on your selection of lodging and dining facilities and mode and distance of transportation. The low end of our estimate assumes that the trainees are within driving distance of our training facility. The high end of our estimate assumes that additional travel is needed. Our training program lasts for approximately three weeks.

10. **Insurance.** These figures are estimates of the cost of the quarterly premiums for the insurance you must obtain and maintain for your Café, as described in Item 8. Insurance premiums may be payable monthly, quarterly, semi-annually or annually, based on the insurance company's practices and your creditworthiness.

11. **Grand Opening Advertising.** You must conduct a grand opening advertising campaign and you must spend between \$10,000 and \$15,000 during your first 90 days of operation on your campaign. We may designate a different time period for you to conduct the grand opening advertising. Your grand opening advertising campaign may include giveaways of food samples and other promotions, as we require, and we must approve of your grand opening advertising campaign before it is conducted.

12. **Licenses and Permits.** These are estimates of the costs for obtaining local business licenses which typically remain in effect for one year. These figures do not include occupancy and construction permits which are included in the leasehold improvements estimate. The cost of these permits and licenses will vary substantially depending on the location of the Franchised Business. We strongly recommend that you verify the cost for all licenses and permits required in your jurisdiction before signing the Franchise Agreement.

13. **Professional Fees.** We strongly recommend that you engage an accountant and a franchise attorney to advise you in your evaluation of the franchise we are offering.

14. **Additional Funds.** You will need capital to support ongoing expenses, such as payroll, utilities, rent, Royalty Fees, POS and other technology access fees, and Brand Development Fees, if these costs are not covered by sales revenue for your first three months of operation. Our estimate does not include any sales revenue you may generate. New businesses often generate a negative cash flow. We estimate that the amount given will be sufficient to cover ongoing expenses for the start-up phase of the business, which we calculate to be three months. This is only an estimate and there is no assurance that additional working capital will not be necessary during this start-up phase or after.

15. **Total.** We relied upon our affiliates' experience and our management's experience in operating Long Island Bagel Cafés since 2001 when preparing these figures. These amounts do not include any estimates for debt service. These are only estimates. Your costs may vary based on actual rental prices in your area, and other site-specific requirements or regulations. The costs outlined in this Item 7 are not intended to be a forecast of the actual cost to you or to any particular franchisee.

* * * * *

**YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER – DEVELOPMENT OF THREE RESTAURANTS**

(1) Type of Expenditure	(2) Amount	(3) Method of Payment	(4) When Due	(5) To Whom Payment is to be Made
Reservation Fee ⁽¹⁾	\$62,500	Lump Sum	On signing Multi-Unit Development Agreement	Us
Other Expenditures for First Café ⁽²⁾	\$550, 200 to \$847,100	See First Table	See First Table	See First Table
Total	\$612,700 to \$909,600			

In general, none of the expenses listed in the above chart are refundable. We do not finance any portion of your initial investment.

Notes:

1. **Reservation Fee.** The reservation fee is discussed in Item 5. Our estimate assumes you will develop three Cafés. If you choose to develop additional Cafés, your reservation fee will increase by \$10,000 for each additional Café you commit to develop.

2. **Other Expenditures for First Café.** These are the estimates to build-out your first Café. Costs associated with building out additional Cafés are subject to factors that we cannot estimate or control, such as inflation, increased labor costs or increased materials costs.

ITEM 8: RESTRICTIONS ON SOURCES OF PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

You must purchase or lease and install all fixtures, furnishings, equipment (including point of sales system), décor items, signs and related items we require, all of which must conform to the standards and specifications stated in our Confidential Operations Manual (the “Manual”) or otherwise in writing, unless you have first obtained our written consent to do otherwise. You may not install or permit to be installed on the Café premises any fixtures, furnishings, equipment, décor items, signs, games, vending machines or other items without our written consent or that do not comply with our specifications.

To make sure that the highest degree of quality and service is maintained, you must operate the Café in strict conformity with the methods, standards and specifications that we prescribe in the Manual or otherwise in writing. You must maintain in sufficient supply and use and sell at all times only those food and beverage items, ingredients, products, materials, supplies and paper goods that meet our standards and specifications. All menu items must be prepared in accordance with the recipes and procedures specified in the Manual or other written materials. You must not deviate from these standards and specifications by the use or offer of non-conforming items, or differing amounts of any items, without obtaining our written consent first. We can, and expect to, modify our standards and specifications as we deem necessary. We will provide you notice in the Manual or otherwise in writing (such as via email) of any changes in our standards and/or specifications.

You must permit us or our agents, during normal business hours, to remove a reasonable number of samples of food or non-food items from your inventory or from the Café free of charge for testing by us

or by an independent laboratory to determine whether the samples meet our then-current standards and specifications. In addition to any other remedies we may have, we may require you to reimburse our costs for the testing if we have not previously approved the supplier of the item or if the sample fails to conform to our specifications.

You must obtain all food and beverage items, ingredients, supplies, materials, fixtures, furnishings, equipment (including point of sale system and communication systems), and other products used or offered for sale at the Café solely from suppliers who demonstrate, to our continuing reasonable satisfaction, the ability to meet our then-current standards or in accordance with our standards and specifications. A complete list of our approved products and suppliers will be included in the Manual and is subject to change over time. We will provide you notice in the Manual or otherwise in writing (such as via email) of any changes to the lists of approved products and approved suppliers. There may be cases where certain items can be purchased from any supplier.

If you wish to purchase, lease or use any products that we have not previously approved, or purchase or lease from a supplier we have not previously approved, you must submit a written request for approval or you must request the supplier to do so. You must pay our then-current evaluation fee, if any, for each product or supplier you request to have approved. We must approve any product or supplier in writing before you make any purchases of that product or from that supplier. We can require that our representatives be permitted to inspect the supplier's facilities and that samples from the supplier be delivered, either to us or to an independent laboratory, for testing. We reserve the right to re-inspect the facilities and products of any approved supplier and to revoke our approval if the supplier fails to continue to meet any of our then-current standards. Our supplier approval procedure does not obligate us to approve any particular supplier. We will notify you in writing within 30 days after you have requested our approval whether the proposed product or supplier is, in fact, approved or disapproved. We are not required to make available to you or to any supplier our criteria for product or supplier approval. We are not obligated to approve any specific product or supplier if we believe that approval of that product or supplier is not in the best interests of the System. We may revoke our prior approval of any product or supplier at any time, and after your receipt of written notice from us regarding our revocation you must stop using that product or stop purchasing from that supplier.

We and/or our affiliates may develop for use in the System certain products which are prepared from confidential proprietary recipes and other proprietary products which bear the Marks. Because of the importance of quality and uniformity of production and the significance of those products in the System, it is to your and our benefit that we closely control the production and distribution of those products. Therefore, you will use only our proprietary recipes and other proprietary products and will purchase those items solely from us or from a source designated by us your entire inventory of those products.

Currently our Supply Affiliate is the sole approved supplier for bagels, salads and branded paper goods for your Café, and our Supply Affiliate reserves the right to earn a profit from the sale of these items. In addition, we are the sole approved supplier for the point of sale system, and we reserve the right to earn a profit from the sale of this system to our franchisees. During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2021, neither we nor our Supply Affiliate earned any revenue from the sale of these products to our franchisees. The following officers listed in Item 2 have an ownership interest in both our Supply Affiliate and us: Randy Narod and Joseph Anzalone. None of our officers has an ownership interest in any other approved supplier.

We may establish strategic alliances or preferred vendor programs with suppliers that are willing to supply some products, equipment, or services to some or all of the Cafés in our System. We and/or our affiliates may negotiate supply contracts with our suppliers under which we are able to purchase products, equipment, supplies, services and other items at a price that will benefit us and our franchisees. If we do establish those types of alliances or programs, we may limit the number of approved suppliers with whom you may deal, we may designate sources that you must use for some or all products, equipment and services,

and we may refuse to approve proposals from franchisees to add new suppliers if we believe that approval would not be in the best interests of the System or the franchised network of Cafés.

We have the right to collect and retain any and all allowances, rebates, credits, incentives, or benefits (collectively, “Allowances”) offered by manufacturers, suppliers, and distributors to you, to us, or to our affiliates based upon your purchases of products and services from manufacturers, suppliers, and distributors. We or our affiliates will have all of your right, title, and interest in and to any and all of these Allowances. We or our affiliates may collect and retain any or all of these Allowances without restriction (unless otherwise instructed by the manufacturer, supplier, or distributor). We may also choose to contribute these Allowances to the Brand Development Fund, but if we do so it does not reduce or eliminate your obligation to pay the Brand Development Fee. For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2021, neither we nor our affiliates earned revenue from Allowances.

For your catering services, we anticipate that your employees will use their personal vehicles to provide these services from your Café. We reserve the right to require you to have temporary signage placed on each delivery vehicle. We expect that all delivery vehicles will be kept clean, in good working order and be properly registered and insured. You must have each person providing those services to comply with all laws, regulations and rules of the road, including “hands free” and no texting laws, and to use due care and caution operating and maintaining the motor vehicles. Except as described in this paragraph, we do not have any standards or exercise control over any motor vehicle that you use.

All advertising and promotional materials, signs, decorations, paper goods (including menus and all forms and stationery used in the Café) and other items we designate must bear the Marks in the form, color, location and manner we prescribe. In addition, all your advertising and promotion in any medium must be conducted in a dignified manner and must conform to the standards and requirements in the Manual or otherwise. You must obtain our approval before you use any advertising and promotional materials and plans if we have not prepared or approved them during the 12 months before their proposed use. Any advertising and promotional materials you submit to us for our review will become our property.

You must obtain our acceptance of the site for the Café before you acquire the site by lease, sublease or purchase agreement. You must also obtain our acceptance of any contract of sale or lease for the Café before you sign the contract or lease. You must provide us with a copy of the fully signed lease for the Café premises. We may require you and your landlord to sign a Collateral Assignment of Lease which permits us to assume your lease in certain circumstances, including the termination or expiration of your Franchise Agreement (Attachment 3 to the Franchise Agreement).

Your Café must be constructed according to plans that we have accepted. We will provide you with sample plans and/or our specifications for a Long Island Bagel Café, and we reserve the right to designate or approve the architect/designer that you use. We also reserve the right to approve the contractor you select. You must arrange for construction plans to be created that incorporate our requirements into the size and shape of the approved site for your Café. You may not use the plans or begin building out your Café until we have approved the construction plans, and any changes to the construction plans must also be approved by us before the change may be implemented. Our review is not meant to assess compliance with any applicable laws, regulations or building codes. Our review is only to verify that the construction plans accurately present our trade dress, the Marks and meet our specifications. We reserve the right to inspect your Café while it is being constructed. You may not open your Café for business without our approval. You must certify to us that your Café has been constructed in compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act.

Before you begin construction of the Café, you must obtain the insurance coverages we require. Our current insurance requirements are described below. We may modify our insurance requirements during the term of your Franchise Agreement, and any modifications will be communicated to you in our Manual or otherwise in writing. This insurance coverage must be maintained during the term of the Franchise Agreement and must be obtained from a responsible, duly licensed carrier or carriers acceptable

to us. All insurance must be on an “occurrence” basis. You must provide us with certificates of insurance showing that you have obtained the required insurance coverages at least 10 days before construction of your Café begins, and then 30 days before expiration of each policy showing that each policy has been renewed.

Your coverage must include us as an additional named insured on a primary non-contributory basis to the general liability policy and the auto liability policy. The additional insureds should be listed on the certificate as follows: “LIBC Franchise LLC and its members, officers, directors, partners, shareholders, regional directors, parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, agents and employees”; and it must be provided on an Additional Insured Grantor of Franchise Endorsement form CG2029 (or an endorsement form with comparable wording acceptable to us).

The insurance must be underwritten by insurers licensed and permitted to write coverage in the state in which the Café is located and with a rating of “A-” or better with A.M. Best Company. The insurance we require is in addition to any insurance required by the terms of your lease. The coverages that we require include: (1) commercial general liability insurance (including premises liability, products liability, and personal injury protection) with limits of not less than \$1,000,000 per occurrence and \$2,000,000 aggregate; (2) automobile insurance, including non-owned and hired vehicles and uninsured/ underinsured motorist coverages, with limits of not less than \$1,000,000 combined single limit; (3) property insurance with full replacement cost for improvements, equipment, contents, and inventory, with a deductible of not more than \$10,000; (4) loss of income insurance to cover 12 months unlimited loss of income; (5) workers’ compensation and employer liability insurance as required by the laws of the state where your Café is located; (6) any insurance required by the terms of your lease (such as flood insurance if the accepted location is in a flood zone); and (7) any insurance we may require in the future.

You and your insurers shall agree to waive rights of subrogation against us. Each year we may unilaterally modify the insurance minimum coverage requirements which may include an increase to the minimum coverage requirements to reflect changes in inflation or as market conditions warrant.

In addition, related to any construction, renovation or remodeling of the Café, you must maintain builders’ risks insurance and performance and completion bonds in forms and amounts, and written by a carrier or carriers, satisfactory to us. All of the policies must name us and those of our affiliates that we specify, and the respective officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them, as additional named insureds and must include a waiver of subrogation in favor of all those parties.

We have the right to require that you obtain from your insurance company a report of claims made and reserves set against your insurance. All insurance policies must expressly provide that no less than 30 days’ prior written notice must be given to us in the event of a material alteration to or cancellation of the policies. If we request it, you must deliver to us a copy of the insurance policy or policies we require. We have the right to change our insurance requirements during the term of your Franchise Agreement, including the types of coverage and the amounts of coverage, and you must comply with those changes. If you do not obtain any insurance as required, we have the right (but not the obligation) to purchase insurance on your behalf and you must reimburse our costs related to this purchase plus a 10% administrative fee.

We estimate that your purchases from us or approved suppliers, or that must conform to our specifications, will represent approximately 80% to 85% of your total purchases in establishing the Café, and approximately 80% to 85% of your total purchases in the continuing operation of the Café.

Currently, there are no purchasing or distribution cooperatives. However, we can require that you make your purchases through a cooperative if one is formed.

Although we do not do so currently, we may in the future negotiate purchase arrangements, including price terms, with designated and approved suppliers on behalf of all franchisees.

We provide no material benefits (such as the grant of additional franchises) based on your use of designated sources; however, failure to use approved items or designated suppliers and contractors may be a default under the Franchise Agreement. Additionally, when there is any default under the Franchise Agreement, we reserve the right, in addition to other remedies available under the Franchise Agreement, to direct suppliers to withhold furnishing products and services to you.

ITEM 9: FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS

This table lists your principal obligations under the franchise and other agreements. It will help you find more detailed information about your obligations in these agreements and in other items of this disclosure document.

In the table below, the following abbreviations have these meanings: FA means the Franchise Agreement and MUDA means the Multi-Unit Development Agreement.

Obligation	Article or Section in Agreement	Disclosure Document Item
a. Site selection and acquisition/lease	FA – Article 2 MUDA – Section 3	Items 8 and 11
b. Pre-opening purchases/leases	FA – Articles 6, 7 and 8	Items 6, 7, 8 and 11
c. Site development and other pre-opening requirements	FA – Article 2	Items 8 and 11
d. Initial and ongoing training	FA – Article 6	Items 6, 7 and 11
e. Opening	FA – Articles 2 and 6	Item 11
f. Fees	FA – Articles 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11, 14 and 18 MUDA – Sections 2 and 3	Items 5, 6, 7 and 11
g. Compliance with standards and policies/ operating manual	FA – Articles 2, 3, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12	Items 8, 11 and 14
h. Trademarks and proprietary information	FA – Articles 9 and 10 and Attachment 5 MUDA – Section 7	Items 13 and 14
i. Restrictions on products/services offered	FA – Article 7 MUDA – Section 7	Item 16
j. Warranty and customer service requirements	FA – Article 7	Not applicable
k. Territorial development and sales quotas	MUDA – Section 3	Item 12
l. Ongoing product/service purchases	FA – Article 7	Items 6 and 8
m. Maintenance, appearance and remodeling requirements	FA – Articles 2, 7 and 14	Items 6 and 11
n. Insurance	FA – Article 12	Items 6, 7 and 8
o. Advertising	FA – Article 8	Items 6, 8 and 11

Obligation	Article or Section in Agreement	Disclosure Document Item
p. Indemnification	FA – Article 15 MUDA – Section 14	Item 6
q. Owner’s participation/ management/staffing	FA – Articles 6, 14, 15 and 16 MUDA – Section 7	Items 1, 11 and 15
r. Records and reports	FA – Articles 4, 7 and 11	Item 6
s. Inspections and audits	FA – Articles 2, 7 and 11 MUDA – Section 12	Items 6, 8 and 11
t. Transfer	FA – Article 14 MUDA – Section 11	Items 6 and 17
u. Renewal	FA – Article 3 MUDA – Section 5	Items 6 and 17
v. Post-termination obligations	FA – Article 18 MUDA – Section 10	Items 6 and 17
w. Non-competition covenants	FA – Article 10 and Attachment 5 MUDA – Section 12	Item 17
x. Dispute resolution	FA – Article 19 MUDA – Section 19	Items 6 and 17
y. Liquidated damages	FA –Article 18	Item 6

ITEM 10: FINANCING

We do not offer direct or indirect financing. We do not guarantee your note, lease or obligation.

ITEM 11: FRANCHISOR’S ASSISTANCE, ADVERTISING, COMPUTER SYSTEMS AND TRAINING

Except as listed below, LIBC Franchise LLC is not required to provide you with any assistance.

Pre-Opening Obligations

Multi-Unit Development Agreement: Under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, we will grant to you rights to a Development Area within which you will establish and operate an agreed-upon number of Cafés under separate Franchise Agreements. (Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Section 1.1.)

Franchise Agreement: Before the opening of a Café we will provide the following assistance and services:

1. Our written site selection guidelines and the site selection assistance we deem advisable. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.1.)
2. An on-site evaluation of the proposed site for your Café, if we determine an on-site evaluation is necessary. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.2.)
3. Standard specifications and layouts for building and furnishing the Café, which you will use to have site plans and build-out plans prepared, at your expense. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.3.) We reserve the right to require you to use the architect/designer we designate and to inspect your Café during its construction. We do not otherwise provide you with assistance with conforming the premises to local ordinances and building codes, with obtaining any required permits, or with constructing, remodeling or decorating the premises.
4. On loan, our Manual, which we may revise during the term of your Franchise Agreement. (Franchise Agreement, Sections 5.4 and 10.1.) We may provide all or a portion of the Manual to you electronically, such as via a password-protected website.
5. A list of approved products and suppliers, which we may revise during the term of your Franchise Agreement and which may include us and/or our affiliates as approved suppliers. (Franchise Agreement, Sections 5.9 and 7.4.)
6. An initial training program at our headquarters for up to five people. (Franchise Agreement, Sections 5.10 and 6.4.)
7. One of our representatives to provide up to one week of on-site opening assistance and training around the opening of your Café, at our expense. If you request additional days of on-site assistance you must reimburse our costs for the additional days, including our per diem fee for our representative and the additional out-of-pocket expenses our representative incurs. We do not otherwise assist you with employee hiring and training (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.4.)

Continuing Obligations

Multi-Unit Development Agreement: Under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement:

1. We will review the information regarding potential sites that you provide to us to determine whether the sites meet our standards and criteria for a Long Island Bagel Café and, if the site meets our criteria, accept the site for a Café. (Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Section 8.1.)
2. We will provide you with standard specifications and layouts for building and furnishing the Café. (Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Section 8.2.)
3. We will review your site plan and final build-out plans and specifications for conformity to our standards and specifications. (Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Section 8.3.)
4. We will provide other resources and assistance as may be developed and offered to our multi-unit developers. (Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Section 8.4.)

Franchise Agreement: During the operation of a Café we will provide the following assistance and services:

1. As we reasonably determine necessary, visits to and evaluations of the Café and the products and services provided to make sure that our high standards of quality, appearance and service of the System are maintained. (Franchise Agreement, Sections 5.5 and 7.5.6.)

2. Advice and written materials (including updates to the Manual) concerning techniques of managing and operating the Café, including new developments and improvements in equipment, food products, packaging and preparation. (Franchise Agreement, Section 5.7.)

3. Training programs and seminars and other related activities regarding the operation of the Café as we may conduct for you or Café personnel generally, which may be mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.4.)

4. At your request or if we determine it is necessary, additional on-site training or assistance at your Café. You must pay our per diem fee for each trainer providing the training and you must reimburse our expenses. (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.4.)

5. Administration of the Brand Development Fund. (Franchise Agreement, Section 8.3.)

6. Indemnification against and reimbursement for all damages for which you are held liable in any proceeding arising out of your use of any of the Marks (including settlement amounts), if you and your Principals have fully complied with the terms of the Franchise Agreement. (Franchise Agreement, Section 9.4.)

7. At our option, hold a meeting of our franchisees to discuss new menu offerings, new standards of operation, provide training, and other matters pertaining to the franchise. We may designate that attendance at a franchisee meeting is mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. (Franchise Agreement, Section 6.5.)

Site Selection: You must assume all costs, liabilities, expenses and responsibility for locating, obtaining and developing a site for the Café and for constructing and equipping the Café at the accepted site. You will select the site for the Café subject to our acceptance and using our site selection criteria. Before you lease or purchase the site for the Café, you must locate a site that satisfies our site selection guidelines. If we believe it necessary we will conduct one on-site evaluation, but before we conduct the evaluation you must submit to us in the form we specify a description of the site, including evidence that the site satisfies our site selection guidelines, together with other information and materials that we may reasonably require, including a letter of intent or other evidence that confirms your favorable prospects for obtaining the site. We reserve the right to approve deviations from our site selection standards based on the individual factors and components of a particular site.

You must have located and submitted to us, for our review, all information we require regarding the site you propose for your Café no later than 180 days after you have signed the Franchise Agreement. We will have 30 days after we receive all required information and materials from you to accept or decline the proposed site as the location for your Long Island Bagel Café. If we do not provide our specific acceptance of a proposed site, the site is deemed not accepted. We do not warrant or guarantee that your Café will be successful at any site that we accept. Our acceptance only means that the site meets our minimum requirements for a Café, subject to any deviation from our standards as we may permit.

We will provide you with our current written site selection guidelines and any other site selection counseling and assistance we think is advisable. Our criteria for site selection include: location of the site and its setting (free-standing building, shopping center, shopping mall, downtown location, etc.); availability of parking; visibility from main roads; availability, size and placement of signage; co-tenants in the shopping center or immediate area; other businesses in the immediate area; accessibility to the site; condition of the premises and how much build-out or construction it will need; proximity to competitive businesses; availability of utilities; and base population and median income in the immediate area. We will

use these and other factors in determining the suitability of your proposed site for a Long Island Bagel Café. Once the location for your Café has been determined, your Café may not be relocated without our prior written consent. You must provide us with a copy of the signed lease for your Café location. We will not lease the site and then sublease it to you.

If you are not able to locate a suitable site for your Café within 180 days after you sign the Franchise Agreement, we may provide you with an extension of up to an additional 180 days, if you can show that you are actively searching for a suitable location. Additional extensions may be granted in our sole discretion. We also have the right to terminate your Franchise Agreement if we determine you have not been actively searching for a suitable location.

Opening: We estimate that the time from the Franchise Agreement is signed to the opening of the Café will be approximately nine to 12 months. Your total timeframe may be shorter or longer depending on the time necessary to obtain an accepted site, to obtain financing, to obtain the permits and licenses for the construction and operation of the Café, to complete construction or remodeling as it may be affected by weather conditions, shortages, delivery schedules and other similar factors, to complete the interior and exterior of the Café, including decorating, purchasing and installing fixtures, equipment and signs, and to complete preparation for operating the Café, including purchasing inventory and supplies. Except for the inventory you must purchase from our Supply Affiliate, we do not provide assistance with obtaining or installing equipment, signs, fixtures, opening inventory, or supplies. You must open the Café and begin business within 18 months after you sign the Franchise Agreement. If you are not able to open your Café within this period, we have the right to reduce or eliminate your Designated Territory, or we may terminate your Franchise Agreement. You may not open your Café for business until we have approved you to do so.

If you are a Multi-Unit Developer, you must sign your first Franchise Agreement at the same time you sign the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. The typical length of time between the signing of the Franchise Agreement and the opening of your first Café is the same as for an individual franchisee. Each additional Café you develop must be opened according to the terms of your minimum performance schedule.

Grand Opening Advertising: You must conduct an advertising campaign announcing the grand opening of your Café, and you must spend between \$10,000 and \$15,000 for this campaign. Your grand opening advertising campaign must be conducted in the initial 90 days of operation. We may designate a different time period for you to conduct the grand opening advertising. Your grand opening advertising campaign may include giveaways of food samples and other promotions, as we require, and we must approve of your grand opening advertising campaign before it is conducted.

Brand Development Fund: We reserve the right to establish a Brand Development Fund (“Fund”) to promote the System, Long Island Bagel Cafés and the products and services offered by Long Island Bagel Cafés. (Franchise Agreement, Section 8.3.) You must pay a non-refundable Brand Development Fee to the Fund in an amount equal to 1% of Gross Sales. As stated in Item 8, we may contribute Allowances we receive from approved suppliers to the Fund. If we choose to do this, it does not reduce or eliminate your obligation to pay the Brand Development Fee. Cafés owned by us or our affiliates will contribute to the Fund on the same basis as our franchisees. Since the Fund was not established in the fiscal year ending December 31, 2021 no money was spent by the Fund.

The Fund will be used for national and regional advertising, marketing, publicity and promotional activity relating to our business. We will determine, in our fully unrestricted discretion, the manner in which the Fund will be spent. Some portion of the Fund may be used for creative concept production, marketing surveys, test marketing and related purposes.

We have the right to direct all advertising activities with sole discretion over creative concepts, materials and media used, as well as their placement and allocation. We also have the right to determine, in our sole discretion, the composition of all geographic and market areas for the implementation of these

advertising and promotional activities. The Fund may be used to meet any and all costs of maintaining, administering, directing and preparing national and/or regional advertising materials, programs and public relations activities (including, without limitation, the cost of preparing and conducting television, radio, magazine, billboard, newspaper, direct mail and other media programs and activities, for conducting marketing surveys, test marketing, employing advertising agencies to assist with these activities, and providing promotional brochures, coupons and other marketing materials to all franchisees of the System). The Fund is intended to maximize general public recognition in all media of the Proprietary Marks and patronage of Long Island Bagel Cafés and we have no obligation to ensure that expenditures of the Fund in or affecting any geographic area are proportionate or equivalent to payments of the Brand Development Fee by franchisees operating in that geographic area, or that any Café will benefit directly or in proportion to the Brand Development Fees paid for the development of advertising and marketing materials or the placement of advertising. We are not obligated to spend any amount on advertising in your area or territory not in relation to the Brand Development Fund. No portion of the Fund will be used to prepare or place advertising that is principally a solicitation for the sale of franchises.

We have the right to reimburse ourselves out of the Fund for the total costs (including indirect costs such as salaries for our employees who devote time and effort to Fund related activities and overhead expenses) of developing, producing and distributing any advertising materials and collecting the Brand Development Fee (including attorneys', auditors' and accountants' fees and other expenses incurred in connection with collecting any Brand Development Fee). We also reserve the right to use a portion of the Fund to subsidize the cost of presenting refresher training and/or a franchisee meeting. The Brand Fund and its earnings shall not otherwise inure to our benefit except that any resulting technology and intellectual property shall be deemed our property.

Funds from the Brand Development Fees paid will be accounted for separately from our other funds. These funds will not be used to defray any of our general operating expenses, except as described in the paragraph above. Any sums paid to the Fund that are not spent in the year they are collected will carry over to the following year. We will prepare, and furnish to you upon written request, an annual statement of funds collected, and costs incurred. We are not required to have any Fund statement audited, but if we choose to have the Fund audited it will be at the Fund's expense. We will furnish to you upon your written request, the current audited financial statements, if an audit is performed.

Although the Fund is intended to be perpetual, we may terminate the Fund at any time. The Fund will not be terminated until all monies in the Fund have been spent for advertising or promotional purposes or returned to contributors on a pro rata basis. If we terminate the Fund, we have the right to reinstate it at any time and you must again contribute to the Fund. Any reinstated Fund will be maintained as described above.

Local Advertising: You must conduct local advertising in your Designated Territory, and you must spend at least 2% of Gross Sales each month on local advertising for your Café. Within 30 days of our request, you must provide us with proof of your local advertising expenditures, including verification copies of the advertisements.

We must approve all marketing materials before you use them. You must not advertise or use our Marks in any fashion on the internet, or via other means of advertising through telecommunication, including social media, without our express written consent. You may not directly solicit customers outside of your Designated Territory.

Any marketing that you propose to use that has either not been prepared by us or has not been approved by us in the immediately preceding 12-month period must be submitted to us for our review not later than 15 days before you intend to use it. Unless we provide our specific approval of the proposed materials within this 15-day period, the materials are deemed not approved. Any materials you submit to us for our review will become our property, and there will be no restriction on our use or distribution of these materials.

We reserve the right to require you to include certain language in your local marketing, such as “Franchises Available” and our website address and phone number.

Cooperative Advertising: We may designate any geographic area in which two or more Cafés are located as a region for purposes of establishing an advertising cooperative (“Cooperative”), or we may approve of the formation of an advertising Cooperative by our franchisees. The members of the Cooperative for any area will consist of all Cafés, whether operated by us, our affiliates or our franchisees. We have the right to dissolve, merge or change the structure of the Cooperatives. Each Cooperative will be organized for the exclusive purposes of administering advertising programs and developing promotional materials for use by the members in local advertising, subject to our approval as described above. If a Cooperative has been established for a geographic area where your Café is located when the Franchise Agreement is signed, or if any Cooperative is established during the term of the Franchise Agreement, you must become a member of the Cooperative. If the Cooperative will operate according to written documents, we must approve of these documents, and a copy of the Cooperative documents applicable to the geographic area in which your Café will be located will be provided to you if you request it. You will not have to participate in more than one Cooperative.

The payments you make to a Cooperative may be applied by you toward satisfaction of your local advertising requirement, but if the amount you contribute to a Cooperative is less than your local advertising requirement, you must still spend the difference locally. By vote of the members, the members will determine the amount that each member must contribute to the Cooperative. All Cafés in the Cooperative, including those owned by us and/or our affiliates, will have the same voting rights as franchisees, but no one Café (or commonly controlled group of Cafés) will have more than 25% of the total vote.

All contributions to the Cooperative will be maintained and administered in accordance with the documents governing the Cooperative, if any. The Cooperative will be operated solely as a conduit for the collection and expenditure of the Cooperative fees for the purposes outlined above. No advertising or promotional plans or materials may be used by the Cooperative or furnished to its members without first obtaining our approval. Currently there are no Cooperatives in the System. The Cooperative is not required to prepare an annual financial statement.

Website / Intranet / Social Media: We alone may establish, maintain, modify or discontinue all internet, and electronic commerce activities pertaining to the System. We have established one or more websites accessible through one or more uniform resource locators (“URLs”). We will provide your Café with a listing on our website and we may, but are not required to, design and provide for the benefit of your Café a “click through” subpage at our website for the promotion of your Café. If we establish one or more websites or other modes of electronic commerce and if we provide a “click through” subpage at the website(s) for the promotion of your Café, you must routinely provide us with updated copy, photographs and news stories about your Café suitable for posting on your “click through” subpage. We reserve the right to specify the content, frequency and procedure you must follow for updating your “click through” subpage.

Any websites or other modes of electronic commerce that we establish or maintain, including any software or mobile app we may develop, may – in addition to advertising and promoting the products, programs or services available at Long Island Bagel Cafés – also be devoted in part to offering Long Island Bagel Café franchises for sale and be used by us to exploit the electronic commerce rights which we alone reserve.

In addition to these activities, we may also establish an intranet through which downloads of operations and marketing materials, exchanges of franchisee email, System discussion forums and System-wide communications (among other activities) can be done. You may not maintain your own website; otherwise maintain a presence or advertise on the internet or any other mode of electronic commerce in connection with your Café; establish a link to any website we establish at or from any other website or page; or at any time establish any other website, electronic commerce presence or URL which in whole or

in part incorporates the “Long Island Bagel Café” name or any names confusingly similar to the Proprietary Marks.

You may promote your Café on social and networking websites, such as Facebook, Instagram, LinkedIn or Twitter. Your use of social and networking websites must comply with our System standards regarding the use of social media in your Café’s operation, which may include specifications regarding use of the Proprietary Marks and prohibitions on you and the Café’s employees posting or blogging comments about the Café or the System on any social or networking website you use. If you make any posting on a social or networking website that we do not approve of or that does not meet our standards, you must remove the posting within 24 hours after notification from us. At our request, you must provide us with your login credentials and/or administrative access to any social media or networking accounts you create. We may provide access to branded social media pages/handles/assets, and you must update these regularly. We reserve the right to conduct collective/national campaigns via local social media on your behalf.

We alone will be, and at all times will remain, the sole owner of the copyrights to all material which appears on any website we establish and maintain, including any and all material you may furnish to us for your “click through” subpage.

Advisory Council: We may, in our discretion, form an advisory council to work with us to improve the System, the products offered by Long Island Bagel Cafés, advertising conducted by the Fund, and any other matters that we deem appropriate. If an advisory council is formed, it will act solely in an advisory capacity, and will not have decision making authority. We will have the right to form, change, merge or dissolve any advisory council. We may develop by-laws for any advisory council.

If formed, an advisory council will be comprised of our representatives and franchisee representatives. Franchisee representatives may be selected by us or by a vote of other franchisees in the System. If you participate on an advisory council, you will pay any expenses you incur related to your participation, such as travel and living expenses to attend council meetings.

Training: No later than 30 days before the date the Café is scheduled to begin operation, up to five trainees must have completed, to our satisfaction, our mandatory initial training program. We will conduct this training at our corporate headquarters, at an affiliate’s Café, or at another location we designate. We anticipate training will be held on Long Island, New York. Your trainees must include you (or one of your Principals) and your General Manager. Our initial training program is mandatory for all new franchisees and lasts for approximately three weeks. Initial training programs will be offered at various times during the year depending on the number of new franchisees entering the System, replacement general managers and other personnel needing training, the number of new Cafés being opened and the timing of the scheduled openings of Cafés.

We will provide instructors and training materials for up to five trainees at no additional cost. You may have additional personnel trained by us for the Café, at your expense. We will determine whether your trainees have satisfactorily completed initial training. If you (or one of your Principals) or your General Manager do not satisfactorily complete the initial training program or if we determine that these persons cannot satisfactorily complete the training program, you must designate a replacement to satisfactorily complete the training before you will be permitted to open your Café. If you, the replacement Principal or replacement General Manager cannot complete the initial training program to our satisfaction, we have the right to terminate your Franchise Agreement.

Any manager subsequently designated by you must also receive and complete the initial training program to our satisfaction, even if this requires sending that manager to our headquarters training program, at your expense. We reserve the right to charge a reasonable fee for the initial training we provide to a replacement or successor employee if we have not approved you to provide the training. You must also pay for all expenses your trainees incur for any training program, including costs of travel, lodging, meals and applicable wages. We may approve you to train replacement managers under our training program before

permitting you to train your entire staff for a third or later Café opening. You may not train any personnel until we have approved you as a trainer.

For the opening of the Café, we will provide you with one of our representatives. The trained representative will provide on-site pre-opening and opening training, supervision, and assistance to you for up to one week around your Café opening, at our expense. If you request that our representative provide additional days of on-site assistance, you must also reimburse the expenses our representative incurs while providing the additional days of assistance, including travel, lodging and meals and our per diem fee.

If, during the term of your Franchise Agreement, you request that we provide additional training or assistance on-site at your Café or if we determine that additional training or assistance is necessary, you must pay our then-current per diem fee for each trainer we provide, and you must reimburse us for any expenses our trainers incur, such as costs of travel, lodging, and meals.

The instructional materials used in the initial training include our Manual, marketing and promotion materials, materials related to the operation of the point of sale system, and any other materials that we believe will be beneficial to our franchisees in the training process.

The training schedule and activities of the initial training program are described below:

TRAINING PROGRAM

Subject	Hours of Classroom Training	Hours of On-the-Job Training	Location
Franchisee Orientation and Onboarding	2	0	Long Island, New York
Bagel Baking	2	6	Long Island, New York
Food Preparation and Cooking	8	24	Long Island, New York
Store Management	10	10	Long Island, New York
Store Presentation	2	2	Long Island, New York
Financial Reporting and Accounting	6	0	Long Island, New York
Food and Product Ordering	4	4	Long Island, New York
POS System	2	4	Long Island, New York
Marketing and Advertising	4	0	Long Island, New York
Human Resources	2	0	Long Island, New York
Continued Support Provided by Corporate	2	0	Long Island, New York
Total	44	50	

Training is provided by or under the direction of our executive team, which includes: Randy Narod, who is our Founder and Chief Executive Officer. Randy established the Long Island Bagel Café concept in 2001 and has overseen all aspects of operation of our affiliate-owned outlets since their openings. Randy will provide you with the history of the Long Island Bagel Café brand and high-level expectations, operations and vision;

Joseph Anzalone, who is our Chief Operating Officer. Joseph has overseen operations of our affiliate-owned outlets since the first opening in May 2001. Joseph will provide training on operations and culinary standards;

Michael Tiseo, who is our Chief Financial Officer. Michael has overseen the financial functions of all of our affiliate-owned outlets since March 2012. He will provide instruction on bookkeeping, financial reporting, the POS System and audit process;

Joseph Feldman, who is our Director of Operations. Joseph has managed our affiliate-owned Long Beach, New York, outlet since April 2014. Prior to that, he was a manager for Bagel Boss. Joseph will provide training on day-to-day store management, customer service protocols and inventory management;

Michael Durr, who is our Director of Franchisee Field Support. Michael is the managing partner of our Stony Brook, New York outlet. He was a field support technician for the Burger-Fi chain for over two years. Michael will train you on daily operations and customer service protocols;

Juan Reyes, who is our Director of Food Services. Juan has managed the food operations of all of our affiliate-owned outlets since September 2007. He will provide training on food standards, health department requirements, baking of bagels and kitchen operations;

The entire training program is subject to change due to updates in materials, methods, manuals and personnel without notice to you. The subjects and time periods allocated to the subjects actually taught to a specific franchisee and its personnel may vary based on the individual needs and/or experience of those persons being trained.

We may choose to hold refresher training courses, and we may designate that attendance at refresher training is mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. We do not anticipate charging a fee for each trainee attending refresher training, but you will pay for all of the expenses incurred by your trainees, including travel, lodging, meals and wages. We do not anticipate holding refresher training more frequently than annually.

We reserve the right to hold a franchisee meeting, which will not be held more frequently than annually, to provide additional training, introduce new products or changes to the System, or for other reasons. We may designate that attendance at an annual meeting is mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. We do not anticipate charging a fee for each attendee at the meeting, but you will pay for all of the expenses incurred by your attendees at the meeting, including travel, lodging, meals and wages. We will designate the location of any franchisee meeting, such as a resort hotel, but we will not designate an unreasonably expensive site.

In addition to our initial training program, you, your managers and any other personnel we designate must be ServSafe certified or other similar certifications. The cost of these certifications are not included in the initial franchise fee and we do not provide certification. You may need to receive periodic additional training and/or certification.

Confidential Operations Manual: The Table of Contents for our Manual is attached to this Disclosure Document as Exhibit E. Our Manual contains approximately 189 pages.

Computer and Point of Sale Systems: You must purchase or lease and use certain point of sale systems, computer hardware and software that meet our specifications and that are capable of electronically interfacing with our computer system. The point of sale and back office systems we currently require you to use are identified in the Manual. The estimated cost of these systems is between \$1,600 and \$2,500. The point of sale and computer systems will provide order processing, business reports, credit card processing, payroll management, inventory management, and other functions.

The computer system is designed to enable us to have immediate access to the information monitored by the system, and there is no contractual limitation or restriction on our access to or use of the information we obtain. The information we may access and/or download from your computer system includes Gross Sales. You must install and maintain equipment and a high-speed internet connection in accordance with our specifications to permit us to access the computer system (or other computer hardware and software) either electronically or at the Café premises. This will permit us to electronically inspect and monitor information concerning your Café's Gross Sales and any other information that may be contained or stored in the equipment and software. You must make sure that we have access at the times and in the manner we specify, at your cost. There are no limitations in the Franchise Agreement on the information we may access and/or download from your computer system.

The approved supplier for the computer system, if we designate one, will be included in the Manual. We recommend, but do not require, that you have a maintenance contract for your computer system. You must have a subscription to the POS software, which includes maintenance and support, on-line ordering for your customers, and gift card and loyalty card programs. The fee for the POS software is \$200 per month, which we collect on behalf of the approved supplier.

You must obtain any upgrades and/or updates to the software used with the computer system, at your expense. In addition, we may require you to update and/or upgrade all or a portion of your point of sale and/or computer system during the term of your Franchise Agreement, at your expense. The Franchise Agreement does not limit our ability to require you to update and/or upgrade your point of sale and/or computer system or the cost of any update and/or upgrade. Neither we nor any affiliate of ours is responsible for providing you with any upgrades, updates or maintenance for your point of sale or computer system.

You must obtain and maintain high speed internet access or other means of electronic communication, as specified by us. It will be a material default under the Franchise Agreement if you do not maintain the equipment, lines and communication methods in operation and accessible to us at all times throughout the term of the Franchise Agreement. We must have access at all times and in the manner that we specify.

ITEM 12: TERRITORY

Franchise Agreement: Your Franchise Agreement will define a designated territory (the “Designated Territory”) within which you will locate a site (the “Accepted Location”) for your Café. Once you have secured an Accepted Location, we will add the address of the Accepted Location to the Data Sheet attached to your Franchise Agreement. Your Designated Territory will typically include a population of 40,000 people, unless your Franchised Business is located in a major metropolitan downtown area, or similarly populated central business district (a “Central Business District”). If your Franchised Business is located in such a major metropolitan downtown area or Central Business District, your Designated Territory may be limited to the geographic area comprised of anywhere from a radius of two (2) blocks to one (1) mile around the Accepted Location, as we deem appropriate. The size of your Designated Territory may vary from other system franchises based on the location and demographics surrounding your territory.

The boundaries of your Designated Territory may be described in terms of zip codes, streets, landmarks (both natural and man-made), county lines, or otherwise delineated on a map attached to the Data Sheet. The sources we use to determine the population within your Designated Territory will be publicly available population information (such as data published by the U.S. Census Bureau or governmental agencies and commercial sources).

You will not receive an exclusive territory. You may face competition from other franchisees, from outlets that we own, or from other channels of distribution or competitive brands that we control.

During the term of the Franchise Agreement, we will not establish or operate, nor license any other person to establish or operate, a Café in the Designated Territory, except as may be permitted under the

Franchise Agreement and those exceptions are described below. There are no circumstances under which the Designated Territory may be altered before your Franchise Agreement expires or is terminated.

Your territorial protection does not depend on your achieving a certain sales volume, market penetration, or other contingency.

If, during the term of the Franchise Agreement, you wish to relocate your Café, or if the Café is damaged or destroyed and cannot be repaired within 60 days, you must submit to us in writing the materials we require to consider your request, including information concerning the proposed new location for the Café. You must also meet certain other requirements, such as being in compliance with the Franchise Agreement, the location meets our then-current requirements for a Long Island Bagel Café and is located within your Designated Territory, and you must sign our then-current form of Franchise Agreement. If we permit you to relocate, you will not pay a new initial franchise fee when you sign the new Franchise Agreement, but you must reimburse our expenses, up to \$5,000 related to your relocation request.

Nothing in the Franchise Agreement will prohibit us from: (1) operating and/or franchising others to operate businesses identified in whole or in part, by the Proprietary Marks and/or utilizing the System in the Designated Territory, that are located in gas stations or convenience stores; transportation facilities, including airports, train stations, subways and rail and bus stations; military bases and government offices; sports facilities, including stadiums and arenas; amusement parks, zoos and convention centers; car and truck rest stops and travel centers; educational facilities; recreational theme parks; hospitals; hotels; business or industrial foodservice venues; venues in which foodservice is or may be provided by a master concessionaire or contract foodservice provider; Indian reservations; casinos; mass gathering events or any similar captive market location not reasonably available to you (a “Non-Traditional Site”); (2) awarding national, regional or local licenses to third parties to sell products under the Proprietary Marks in foodservice facilities primarily identified by the third party’s trademark; (3) merchandising and distributing products identified by the Proprietary Marks in the Designated Territory through any method or channel of distribution other than through the operation of a Café, including distribution of products (including any proprietary products) through grocery stores, club stores and similar stores; (4) selling and distributing products identified by the Proprietary Marks in the Designated Territory to restaurants other than Cafés identified by the Proprietary Marks, regardless of whether the restaurants are licensed to use the Proprietary Marks in connection with their retail sales or not; (5) selling products and services through other channels of distribution, including the internet, wholesale, mail order and catalog; (6) developing and/or owning other franchise systems for the same or similar products and services using trade names and trademarks other than the Proprietary Marks; and (7) purchasing, being purchased by, merging or combining with businesses that we deem to offer direct competition to Long Island Bagel Cafés. We are not required to pay you any consideration if we exercise any right specified above in the Designated Territory.

If any Non-Traditional Site (as described above) is located within the physical boundaries of your Designated Territory, then the premises of this Non-Traditional Site will not be included in your Designated Territory and you will have no rights to this Non-Traditional Site.

We and our affiliates are not prohibited from: (1) operating and franchising others to operate, during the term of the Franchise Agreement, Long Island Bagel Cafés at any location outside of the Designated Territory; (2) operating and franchising others to operate, after the Franchise Agreement terminates or expires, Long Island Bagel Cafés at any location, including locations inside the Designated Territory; and (3) operating and franchising others to operate at any location, during or after the term of the Franchise Agreement, any type of restaurant other than a Long Island Bagel Café.

The restrictions above do not apply to Long Island Bagel Cafés in operation, under lease or construction or other commitment to open in the Designated Territory as of the effective date of the Franchise Agreement.

Except as expressly limited above, we and our affiliates have the right to conduct any business activities under any name, in any geographic area and at any location, regardless of the proximity to your Café or the economic effect on your Café or your activities under the Franchise Agreement.

You may sell our menu items to customers who live anywhere but who choose to dine at or from your Café. You may not engage in any promotional activities or sell products or services, whether directly or indirectly, through or on the web, the internet, or any other similar proprietary or common carrier electronic delivery system; through catalogs or other mail order devices sent or directed to customers or prospective customers located anywhere; or by telecopy or other telephonic or electronic communications, including toll-free numbers, directed to or received from customers or prospective customers located anywhere. While you may place advertisements in printed media and on television and radio that are targeted to customers and prospective customers located within your Designated Territory, you will not be deemed to be in violation of the Franchise Agreement if those advertisements, because of the natural circulation of the printed media or reach of television and radio, are viewed by prospective customers outside of your Designated Territory. You may not directly solicit customers outside of your Designated Territory.

You have no options, rights of first refusal, or similar rights to acquire additional franchises during the term of the Franchise Agreement. You may not sell any products to any business or other customer at wholesale.

We and our affiliates may sell products under the Marks within and outside your Designated Territory through any method of distribution other than a Long Island Bagel Café, including sales through channels of distribution such as the web, the internet, catalog sales, grocery stores, club stores, specialty food stores, telemarketing or other direct marketing sales (together, “alternative distribution channels”). You may not use alternative distribution channels to make sales outside or inside your Designated Territory and you will not receive any compensation for our sales through alternative distribution channels.

We or our affiliate will fulfill all orders placed through the retail portion of our website and you will not be entitled to any portion of the profits received from this, even if the customer’s order is generated from or delivered to an address in your Designated Territory.

Neither we nor any parent or affiliate has established, or presently intends to establish, other franchised or company-owned Café which sell our proprietary products or services under a different trade name or trademark, but we reserve the right to do so in the future, without first obtaining your consent. We describe earlier in this Item 12 what we may do anywhere and at any time.

Multi-Unit Development Agreement: Under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, we grant you the right to develop and operate (under separate Franchise Agreements) the number of Long Island Bagel Cafés in the Development Area that is specified in the minimum performance schedule, which is an attachment to the Multi-Unit Development Agreement. The Development Area is typically described in terms of municipal or county boundaries but may be defined as a specified trade area in a municipality. The actual size of the Development Area will vary depending upon the availability of contiguous markets, our long-range development plans, your financial and operational resources, the number of Cafés you commit to develop, population, and market conditions. Our designation of a particular Development Area is not an assurance or warranty that there are a sufficient number of suitable sites for Cafés in the Development Area for you to meet your minimum performance schedule. The responsibility to locate and prepare a sufficient number of suitable sites is solely yours and we have no obligation to accept sites which do not meet our criteria for you to meet the minimum performance schedule.

Except as described below, during the term of the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, we and our affiliates will not operate or grant a franchise for the operation of Cafés to be located within the Development Area. However, we have the right to terminate this exclusivity if you are not in full compliance with all of the terms and conditions of the Multi-Unit Development Agreement and all of the

Franchise Agreements signed under it. Your territorial rights to the Development Area may or may not, in our discretion, include the right to develop Cafés at any Non-Traditional Site. As long as you meet the eligibility requirements for the Non-Traditional Site at issue and are not in default under any agreements with us, we agree to offer you a 30-day right of first refusal for any Non-Traditional Site locations that are located within your Development Area prior to developing the location ourselves or offering them to a third party. Because we reserve the right to develop Cafés at Non-Traditional Sites, as described above, your Development Area is not exclusive to you. You may face competition from other franchisees, from outlets that we own, or from other channels of distribution or competitive brands that we control.

Once you have secured the premises for a given Franchise Business to fulfill your obligations under your Multi-Unit Development Agreement, we will grant you a Designated Territory around the Franchised Business wherein you will have territorial protection as previously discussed above in item 12.

Each Franchised Business you timely open and commence operating under our then-current form of franchise agreement will be operated: (i) from an Accepted Location within the Designed Territory, which we will define once the premises for that Franchised Business has been approved.

After the final Café under your minimum performance schedule has opened, if we believe that it is desirable to establish additional Cafés within the Development Area, and if you complied with the terms of your Multi-Unit Development Agreement and are in compliance with your Franchise Agreements, we will offer you the right to develop these additional Cafés. You must exercise this option, in full, within 30 days after our notice to you. If you do not exercise or you decline this right of first refusal, we shall have the right to sell these development rights to another multi-unit developer or to develop the Cafés ourselves.

To maintain your rights under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement you must have open and in operation the cumulative number of Cafés stated on the minimum performance schedule by the dates agreed upon in the minimum performance schedule. Failure to do so will be grounds for either a loss of territorial exclusivity or a termination of the Franchise Agreement or Multi-Unit Development Agreement.

In addition, when the last Café to be developed within the Development Area opens for business, your exclusive rights under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement with respect to the Development Area will have expired and we and our affiliates will have the right to operate and to grant to others development rights and franchises to develop and operate Cafés within the Development Area. This right will be subject only to the territorial rights under your franchise agreements for Cafés in the Development Area and the right of first refusal to develop additional Cafés described above. The Development Area may not be altered unless we and you mutually agree to do so. It will not be affected by your sales volume. You are not granted any other option, right of first refusal or similar right to acquire additional Cafés in your Development Area under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement, except as described above.

Reserved Rights: We and our affiliates reserve the exclusive rights to conduct the following activities under the Franchise Agreement and/or Multi-Unit Development Agreement (as appropriate) to : (i) establish and operate, and license any third party the right to establish and operate, other cafes and Franchises Businesses using the Proprietary Marks and systems at any location outside of your Designated Territory(ies) and, if appropriate, Development Area; (ii) operating and franchising others to operate, after the Franchise Agreement terminates or expires, Long Island Bagel Cafes at any location, including locations inside the Designated Territory; (iii) market, offer and sell products and services that are similar to the products and services offered by the Franchised Business under a different trademark or trademarks at any location, within or outside the Designated Territory(ies) and Site Selection Area; (iv) use the Proprietary Marks or System, other such marks we designate, to distribute our Approved Products in any alternative channel of distribution, within or outside the Designated Territory(ies) and Site Selection Area (including through internet, mail order, catalog sales, grocery stores, wholesale stores, etc.); (v) to acquire, merge with, or otherwise affiliate with, and after that own and operate, and franchise or license others to own or operate, any business of any kind, including, without limitation, any business that offers products or services the same as or similar to the Approved products (but under different Marks), within or outside your Designated

Territory(ies) and, if appropriate, Site Selection Area; (vi) open and operate, or license a third party the right to open and operate, a Café at any Non-Traditional Site within your Designated Territory(ies) and, if appropriate, Site Selection Area, subject to your right of first right of refusal described earlier in this item 12; and (vii) use the Proprietary Marks or System, and license others to use the Proprietary Marks and Systems, to engage in any other activities not expressly prohibited in your Franchise Agreement and, if appropriate, your Development Agreement.

In addition to all the reserved rights above, we and our affiliate reserve the right to undertake all other activities within a Development Area or Designated Territory because we do not grant any type of exclusivity within such areas.

Additional Disclosures: Neither the Franchise Agreement nor the Development Agreement provides you with any right or option to open or operate additional Franchised Businesses (other than specifically provided for in your Development Agreement if you are granted multi-unit development rights). Regardless, each Franchised Business you are granted the right to open and operate must be governed by its own specific form of Franchise Agreement.

We have not established other franchises or company owned outlets or another distribution channel offering or selling similar products or services under a different trademark. Neither we nor our affiliate(s) have established, or presently intend to establish other franchised or company-owned business that sell our Approved Products under a different trade name or trademark, but we reserve the right to do so in the future without your consent.

ITEM 13: TRADEMARKS

The Franchise Agreement grants you the right to use certain trademarks, trade names, service marks, symbols, emblems, logos and indicia of origin designated by us. These Marks may be used only in the manner we authorize and only for the operation of your Franchised Business. The Multi-Unit Development Agreement does not grant to you any right to use the Marks.

You may not use the Marks as a part of your corporate or other legal name, and you must comply with our instructions in filing and maintaining trade name or fictitious name registrations. You must sign any documents we require to protect the Marks or to maintain their continued validity and enforceability. In addition, you may not directly or indirectly contest the validity of our ownership of or our rights in and to the Marks.

Our affiliate, Long Island Bagel Café, LLC, owns the following principal Marks which have been registered or applied for registration with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) on the Principal Register:

Mark	Filing Date	Serial Number	Registration Date	Registration Number
Long Island Bagel Café	9/7/2012	85/723,116	5/20/2014	4,531,641
LIBC	9/7/2012	85/723,136	5/27/2014	4,535,583
Not Your Ordinary Bagel Store	9/7/2012	85/723,171	5/27/2014	4,535,584
	3/5/2020	88/822,142	4/06/2021	6,311,987

Licensors has filed an application for registration of the following Principal Mark on the Principal Register

of the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

Mark	Serial Number	Filing Date	Register
	88822151	March 5, 2020	Principal

Licensor has filed all required affidavits.

With regard to these Marks only, we do not have a federal registration for these trademarks. Therefore, our trademarks do not have many legal benefits and rights as a federally registered trademark. If our right to use these trademarks is challenged, you may have to change to an alternative trademark, which may increase your expenses.

There are no currently effective determinations of the USPTO, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, the trademark administrator of any state or any court, no pending infringement, opposition or cancellation proceedings and no pending litigation involving any of the Marks that may significantly affect the ownership or use of any Mark listed above. There are no agreements currently in effect which limit our right to use or to license others to use the Marks, except for the trademark license agreement between us and our affiliate dated March 26, 2019. Our affiliate intends to file all affidavits and other documents required to maintain his interests in and to the Marks.

You must immediately notify us of any apparent infringement of the Marks or challenge to your use of any of the Marks or claim by any person of any rights in any of the Marks. You and your Principals are not permitted to communicate with any person other than us, or any designated affiliate, our counsel and your counsel involving any infringement, challenge or claim. We can take action and have the right to exclusively control any litigation or USPTO or other administrative or agency proceeding caused by any infringement, challenge or claim or otherwise relating to any of the Marks. You must sign any and all documents, and do what may, in our counsel's opinion, be necessary or advisable to protect our interests in any litigation or USPTO or other administrative or agency proceeding or to otherwise protect and maintain our interests and the interests of any other person or entity (including any affiliate) having an interest in the Marks.

We will indemnify you against and reimburse you for all damages for which you are held liable for your use of any of the Marks, provided that the conduct of you and your Principals in the proceeding and use of the Marks is in full compliance with the terms of the Franchise Agreement.

Except as provided above, we are not obligated by the Franchise Agreement to protect any rights granted to you to use the Marks or to protect you against claims of infringement or unfair competition with respect to them. Although we are not contractually obligated to protect the Marks or your right to use them, as a matter of corporate policy we intend to defend the Marks vigorously.

We may require you, at your expense, to discontinue or modify your use of any of the Marks or to use one or more additional or substitute trade names, service marks, trademarks, symbols, logos, emblems and indicia of origin if we determine that an addition or substitution will benefit the System.

The license to use the Marks granted in the Franchise Agreement is non-exclusive to you. We have and retain certain rights in the Marks including the following:

1. To grant other licenses for the use of the Marks in addition to those licenses already granted or to be granted to franchisees;

2. To develop and establish other systems using the Marks or other names or marks, and to grant licenses or franchises in those systems without providing any rights to you; and

3. To engage, directly or indirectly, at wholesale, retail or otherwise, in (a) the production, distribution, license and sale of products and services and (b) the use of the Marks and any and all trademarks, trade names, service marks, logos, insignia, slogans, emblems, symbols, designs and other identifying characteristics we may develop for that purpose.

ITEM 14: PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION

Patents and Copyrights: We do not have an ownership interest in any pending or registered patents or copyrights that are material to the franchise.

Confidential Operations Manual: You must operate the Café in accordance with the standards and procedures specified in the Manual. One copy of the Manual will be loaned to you by us for the term of the Franchise Agreement. We may, instead of providing you with a hard copy of the Manual, make our Manual available electronically via a password protected website.

You must treat the Manual and any other manuals we create or approve for use in your operation of the Café, and the information contained in them, as confidential. You must also use all reasonable efforts to maintain this information as secret and confidential and you must not duplicate, copy, record or otherwise reproduce these materials, in whole or in part, or make them available to any unauthorized person. The Manual remains our sole property and must be kept in a secure place on the Café premises.

We may revise the contents of the Manual and you must comply with each new or changed standard. You must also ensure that the Manual is kept current at all times. If there is a dispute regarding the contents of the Manual, the terms of the master copy maintained by us at our home office will be controlling.

Confidential Information: We claim proprietary rights in certain of our recipes which are included in the Manual and which are our trade secrets. Any and all information, knowledge, know-how and techniques related to the System that we communicate to you, including the Manual, plans and specifications, marketing information and strategies and site evaluation, selection guidelines and techniques, recipes, and the terms of your agreement with us, are considered confidential. You and each of your Principals are prohibited, during and after the term of your Agreement, from communicating, or using for the benefit of any other person or entity, and, after the term of your Agreement, from using for your or their own benefit, any confidential information, knowledge or know-how concerning the methods of operation of the Café that may be communicated to you or any of your Principals or that you may learn about. You and each of your Principals may divulge this confidential information only to your employees who must have access to it to operate the Café. Neither you nor your Principals are permitted at any time, without first obtaining our written consent, to copy, record or otherwise reproduce the materials or information nor make them available to any unauthorized person.

You must at all times keep confidential any information your customers provide to you, such as names, addresses, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, other contact information, and debit or credit card information. You must continually take steps to preserve the confidentiality of this information according to applicable privacy laws, including PCI Compliance (standards of privacy maintained by the Payment Card Industry). You must indemnify us, our parents or affiliates and all of our directors, officers and employees against any damages related to your failure to maintain this information as confidential, whether the disclosure of any of this information is inadvertent or intentional.

If we ask, you must have your General Manager and any of your personnel who have received or will have access to confidential information sign similar confidentiality covenants. Your Principals also

must sign these covenants. The covenants will be in the form of our Confidentiality and Non-Competition Agreement, attached to the Franchise Agreement as Attachment 5. You must provide us with a copy of each signed Confidentiality and Non-Competition Agreement, and we will be a third-party beneficiary to each agreement with the independent right to enforce each agreement's terms.

If you, your Principals, General Manager or employees develop any new concept, process or improvement in the operation or promotion of the Café, you must promptly notify us and give us all necessary information, free of charge. You, your Principals, General Manager and employees must acknowledge that any of these concepts, processes or improvements will become our property and we may give the information to other franchisees.

ITEM 15: OBLIGATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE ACTUAL OPERATION OF THE FRANCHISE BUSINESS

When you sign your agreement, you must designate and retain at all times an individual to serve as the "General Manager". We recommend that you or one of your Principals act as your General Manager. We do not require you to be actively involved in the daily operation of your Café, but you must still make sure that your Café is being operated according to the terms of your Franchise Agreement and the Manual. If you are not actively involved in the daily operation of your Café, then we may communicate with and rely on the decisions made by your General Manager. You must also retain other personnel as are needed to operate and manage the Café.

Your General Manager must be a full-time employee, and you must have any assistant managers and other employees necessary for the efficient operation of the Café. All of your managers must have successfully completed our training program and be certified by us to operate your Café. Your General Manager must have relevant food service experience, but we do not require that your General Manager have an ownership interest in you or the Café. While your Café is open, you must have at least one certified manager on-site. We recommend, but do not require, that you or one of your Principals act as your General Manager.

The General Manager must satisfy our educational and business criteria as provided to you in the Manual or other written instructions, must be individually acceptable to us, and must be approved by us to act as a General Manager. The General Manager must be responsible for the supervision and management of the Café and must devote full time and best efforts to this activity. The General Manager also must satisfy the applicable training requirements in the Franchise Agreement. If the General Manager cannot serve in the position or does not meet the requirements, he or she must be replaced within 30 days after the General Manager stops serving or no longer meets the requirements.

You must also obtain covenants not to compete, including covenants applicable on the termination of the person's relationship with you, from your General Manager and any of your other personnel who have received or will have access to our training before employment, and any holder of a beneficial interest in you. You must have all of your management personnel sign covenants that they will maintain the confidentiality of information they receive or have access to based on their relationship with you. Our form of Confidentiality and Non-Competition Agreement is included as Attachment 5 to the Franchise Agreement. We reserve the right, in our discretion, to decrease the period of time or geographic scope of the non-competition covenants contained in the attachments or eliminate the non-competition covenants altogether for any party that must sign an agreement as described in this paragraph. We will be a third-party beneficiary to each of these agreements with the independent right to enforce each agreement's terms.

We have identified certain persons under the Franchise Agreement and Multi-Unit Development Agreement that we refer to in this Disclosure Document as your Principals. Your Principals include your spouse, if you are a married individual, your Principals also include those of your business entity's officers and directors (including the officers and directors of your general partner, if applicable) whom we designate

as your Principals and all holders of an ownership interest in you and in any entity that directly or indirectly controls you, and any other person or entity controlling, controlled by, or under common control with you.

Your manager and all other personnel who will have access to our proprietary and Confidential Information and training must sign our Non-Disclosure/Non-Competition Agreement, which is attached to our Franchise Agreement as Attachment 5. If your Franchised Business is owned by an entity, all owners of the entity must personally sign the Franchise Agreement as a Principal. If you are a married individual, your spouse must sign our Spouse Guaranty, which is attached to our Franchise Agreement as Attachment 10.

ITEM 16: RESTRICTIONS ON WHAT THE FRANCHISEE MAY SELL

You must sell or offer for sale all menu items, food products, merchandise, and other products and services we require, in the manner and style we require, including dine-in, carry-out, catering and delivery, as expressly authorized by us in writing. You must sell and offer for sale only the menu items, products and services that we have expressly approved in writing. You must not deviate from our standards and specifications without first obtaining our written consent. You must discontinue selling and offering for sale any menu items, products or services that we may disapprove in writing at any time. We have the right to change the types of menu items, products and services offered by you at the Café at any time, and there are no limits on our right to make those changes.

You must maintain in sufficient supply and use and sell only the food and beverage items, ingredients, proprietary products, merchandise, other products, materials, supplies, and paper goods that conform to our standards and specifications. You must prepare all menu items according to our recipes and procedures for preparation contained in the Manual or other written instructions, including the prescribed measurements of ingredients. You must not deviate from our standards and specifications by the use or offer of nonconforming items or differing amounts of any items, without first obtaining our written consent.

We reserve the right to vary the menu items offered at certain Long Island Bagel Cafés based on regional or local tastes or ingredients. If we allow a Long Island Bagel Café to modify its menu to accommodate regional or local tastes or ingredients, we are not required to grant to you a similar variance or modification.

You must keep the Café very clean and maintain it in good repair and condition. You must make any additions, alterations, repairs and replacements, including repainting or replacement of obsolete signs, furnishings, equipment, and décor as we may reasonably direct. You must not make any changes to the premises without obtaining our written consent before you make the changes. You must obtain and pay for any new or additional equipment, including point of sale, computer hardware and software, fixtures, supplies and other products and materials that you must have to offer and sell new menu items from the Café.

We do not impose any other restrictions in the Franchise Agreement or otherwise, as to the goods or services that you may offer or sell or as to the customers to whom you may offer or sell, except as described in Item 12. You may not directly solicit customers outside of your Designated Territory.

ITEM 17: RENEWAL, TERMINATION, TRANSFER AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION

THE FRANCHISE RELATIONSHIP

This table lists certain important provisions of the franchise and related agreements. You should read these provisions in the agreements attached to this disclosure document.

Provision	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
a. Length of the franchise term	Section 3.1	10 years
b. Renewal or extension of the term	Section 3.2	Up to two renewal terms of 10 years each
c. Requirements for franchisee to renew or extend	Section 3.2	You must provide us with 12 months' notice that you wish to renew, be in compliance with the terms of your Franchise Agreement, be current in all payments required by the Franchise Agreement, remodel and/or refurbish your Restaurant if we require, sign renewal Franchise Agreement, sign general release, pay renewal fee You may be asked to sign a contract with materially different terms and conditions than your original contract, but the boundaries of your territory will remain the same, and the fees on renewal will not be greater than the fees that we then impose on similarly situated renewing franchisees
d. Termination by franchisee	Not applicable	You may terminate the Franchise Agreement on any grounds available by law
e. Termination by franchisor without cause	Not applicable	Not applicable
f. Termination by franchisor with cause	Section 17.1.1	Each of your obligations under the Franchise Agreement is a material and essential obligation, the breach of which may result in termination

Provision	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
g. “Cause” defined – curable defaults	Sections 17.1.3 and 17.2	We may terminate you for cause if you fail to cure certain defaults, including: if you or any of your affiliates fail to pay any monies owed to us, or our affiliates or vendors, and do not cure within five days after notice (or longer period required); participation in a competing business; fail to obtain signed copies of the confidentiality and non-competition covenants contained in the Franchise Agreement within five days after a request; fail to obtain and maintain required insurance within seven days after notice; fail to cure a failed quality assurance audit within 15 days after notice; suspension of required license or permit; use the Marks in an unauthorized manner and fail to cure within 24 hours after notice; fail to maintain quality standards; fail to cure any other default that is susceptible of cure within 30 days after notice
h. “Cause” defined – non-curable defaults	Sections 17.1.2, 17.1.3 and 17.3	We may terminate you for cause if you fail to cure certain defaults, including: if you become insolvent, make a general assignment for benefit of creditors, file a petition or have a petition initiated against you under federal bankruptcy laws, have outstanding judgments against you for over 30 days, sell unauthorized products or services, fail to find an accepted location within time required, fail to remodel when required, fail to open Café when required, fail to comply with any term and condition of any sublease or related agreement and have not cured the default within the given cure period, abandon or lose right to the Café premises, are convicted of a felony or other crime that may have an adverse affect on the System or Marks, transfer any interest without our consent, required license permit is revoked, repeated defaults, or maintain false books or records. In addition, a default under one agreement with us may result in a termination of all of your other agreements with us. This is known as a cross-default provision

Provision	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
i. Franchisee's obligations on termination/non-renewal	Section 18	Obligations include: You must stop operating the Café and using the Marks and System and completely de-identify the business, pay all amounts due to us or our affiliates, return the Manual and all other proprietary materials, comply with confidentiality requirements, pay liquidated damages (if applicable), and at our option, sell or assign to us your rights in the Café premises and the equipment and fixtures used in the business
j. Assignment of contract by franchisor	Section 14.1	We have the right to transfer or assign the Franchise Agreement to any person or entity without restriction. However, no assignment will be granted except to an assignee who, in our good faith judgment, is willing and able to assume our obligations
k. "Transfer" by franchisee – defined	Section 14.2.1	Includes sale, assignment, conveyance, pledge, mortgage or other encumbrance of any interest in the Franchise Agreement, the Café or you (if you are not a natural person)
l. Franchisor approval of transfer by franchisee	Section 14.2.2	You must obtain our consent before transferring any interest. We will not unreasonably withhold our consent
m. Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer	Section 14.2.2	Conditions include: You must pay all amounts due us or our affiliates, not otherwise be in default, sign a general release, and pay a transfer fee. Transferee must meet our criteria, complete training to our satisfaction and sign current Franchise Agreement
n. Franchisor's right of first refusal to acquire franchisee's business	Section 14.4	Within 30 days after notice, receipt of approved transfer applications and an executed agreement for the sale, we have the option to purchase the transferred interest on the same terms and conditions
o. Franchisor's option to purchase franchisee's business	Section 18.12	We have the right to purchase the assets of the Franchised Business for fair market value on termination or non-renewal of the Franchise Agreement
p. Death or disability of franchisee	Section 14.5	If you or a Principal are a natural person, on death or permanent disability, distributee must be approved by us, or franchise must be transferred to someone approved by us within 12 months after death or within six months after notice of permanent disability

Provision	Section in Franchise Agreement	Summary
q. Non-competition covenants during the term of the franchise	Section 10.3.1	You are prohibited from operating or having an interest in a similar business without our prior written consent
r. Non-competition covenants after the franchise is terminated or expires	Section 10.3.2	You and your Principals are prohibited for two years from expiration or termination of the franchise from operating or having an interest in a similar business within five miles of any Café in the System
s. Modification of the agreement	Sections 10.1.5 and 19.2	The Franchise Agreement may not be modified unless mutually agreed to in writing. You must comply with the Manual as amended
t. Integration/merger clause	Section 19.2	Only the terms of the Franchise Agreement and other related written agreements are binding (subject to applicable federal and/or state law). Any representations or promises outside of the Disclosure Document and Franchise Agreement may not be enforceable
u. Dispute resolution by arbitration or mediation	Section 19.7	Arbitration in Nassau County, New York, subject to applicable state law
v. Choice of forum	Section 19.8	Nassau County, New York, subject to applicable state law
w. Choice of law	Section 19.8	New York, subject to applicable state law

THE MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT RELATIONSHIP

This table lists certain important provisions of the Multi-Unit Development and related agreements. You should read these provisions in the agreements attached to this disclosure document.

Provision	Section in Multi-Unit Development Agreement	Summary
a. Length of the franchise term	Section 6	Length of the minimum performance schedule
b. Renewal or extension of the term	Section 5	After all Cafés have been developed, we will negotiate in good faith another Multi-Unit Development Agreement
c. Requirements for multi-unit developer to renew or extend	Not applicable	Not applicable
d. Termination by multi-unit developer	Not applicable	You may seek to terminate on any grounds available to you at law

Provision	Section in Multi-Unit Development Agreement	Summary
e. Termination by franchisor without cause	Not applicable	Not applicable
f. Termination by franchisor with cause	Section 9	We can terminate if you commit any one of several listed violations in Provisions g and h below.
g. “Cause” defined – curable defaults	Section 9	If you use the Marks or System without our consent; participating in a competing business; failure to pay money to us when due; you begin developing a Café before all of your pre-development obligations are met; failure to obtain our consent when required; you open any Café before a Franchise Agreement for that Café has been signed
h. “Cause” defined – non-curable defaults	Section 9	Failure to meet your minimum performance schedule; failure to comply with applicable laws; if all of your Cafés stop operating; unauthorized transfer; you make a material misrepresentation to us; conviction by you or your owners of an indictable offense; bankruptcy or insolvency; if a Franchise Agreement with us is terminated according to its terms (this is a cross-default provision)
i. Multi-unit developer’s obligations on termination/non-renewal	Section 10	You must stop selecting sites for Cafés, and you may not open any more Cafés
j. Assignment of contract by franchisor	Section 11	No restriction on our right to assign. However, no assignment will be made except to an assignee who, in our good faith judgment, is willing and able to assume our obligations under the Multi-Unit Development Agreement
k. “Transfer” by multi-unit developer – defined	Section 11	Includes transfer of any interest in the Multi-Unit Development Agreement
l. Franchisor approval of transfer by multi-unit developer	Section 11	We have the right to approve all transfers, our consent not to be unreasonably withheld
m. Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer	Section 11	Conditions for transfer include not being in default, at least 34% of all Cafés required to be developed are open or under construction, all debts are paid, the buyer meets our current criteria for new Multi-Unit Developers, execution of a general release, payment of transfer fee, buyer personally guarantees all obligations
n. Franchisor’s right of first refusal to acquire multi-unit developer’s business	Section 11	We have the right to match the offer

Provision	Section in Multi-Unit Development Agreement	Summary
o. Franchisor's option to purchase multi-unit developer's business	Not applicable	Not applicable
p. Death or disability of multi-unit developer	Section 11	Interest must be transferred to an approved party within 12 months
q. Non-competition covenants during the term of the franchise	Section 12	You are prohibited from operating or having an interest in a similar business without our prior written consent, except for Cafés operated under Franchise Agreements with us
r. Non-competition covenants after the franchise is terminated or expires	Section 12	No competing business for two years and within five miles of any Café in the System
s. Modification of the agreement	Section 18	The Multi-Unit Development Agreement may not be modified unless mutually agreed to in writing
t. Integration/merger clause	Section 18	Only the terms of the Multi-Unit Development Agreement and other related written agreements are binding (subject to applicable federal and/or state law). Any representations or promises outside of the Disclosure Document and Multi-Unit Development Agreement may not be enforceable
u. Dispute resolution by arbitration or mediation	Section 19	Arbitration in Nassau County, New York, subject to applicable state law
v. Choice of forum	Section 19	Nassau County, New York, subject to applicable state law
w. Choice of law	Section 19	New York, subject to applicable state law

ITEM 18: PUBLIC FIGURES

We do not use any public figure to promote our franchise.

ITEM 19: FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE REPRESENTATIONS

The FTC's Franchise Rule permits a franchisor to provide information about the actual or potential financial performance of its franchised and/or franchisor owned outlets, if there is a reasonable-basis for the information, and if the information is included in the Franchise Disclosure Document. Financial performance information that differs from that included in Item 19 may be given only if: (1) a franchisor provides the actual records of an existing outlet you are considering buying; or (2) a franchisor supplements the information provided in this Item 19, for example, by providing information about performance at a particular location or under particular circumstances.

We do not furnish or authorize our salespersons to furnish any oral or written information concerning the actual or potential sales, costs, income or profits of a Café, except as stated below. The following represents the total annual sales and average sales for Cafés during calendar year 2020 and 2021. The results provided do not include any operating expenses.

The following includes sales information from eight operating Long Island Bagel Cafés operating on Long Island, New York. We have not included results from the Long Island Bagel Café in Baldwin, New York, because this Café is not representative of a typical Long Island Bagel Café. The Baldwin location is primarily a commissary that produces bagels for other affiliate owned Cafés but has a very small retail area with no seating and very limited parking. There is one franchised location in Scarsdale, NY.

Gross Revenue ^{1,2}		
	2021	2020
Oceanside Original Bagels, Inc.	\$4,286,658	\$3,592,630
Long Beach Bagel Inc.	\$2,979,826	\$2,437,880
Glen Cove Gourmet Bagels & Deli, Inc.	\$2,483,893	\$2,105,094
Bellmore Bagel Gourmet, Inc.	\$2,367,781	\$2,431,708
Nesconset Bagel Café LLC	\$2,084,360	\$1,755,265
Mineola Bagel Café LLC	\$1,997,572	\$1,676,140
Stony Brook Bagel Café	\$1,616,896	\$1,366,106
Scarsdale Bagel Café	\$1,527,826	
Low:	\$ 1,527,826	\$ 1,366,106
High:	\$ 4,286,658	\$ 3,592,630
Average:	\$ 2,418,101	\$ 2,194,975
Median:	\$ 2,226,071	\$ 2,105,094

Our affiliate-owned Long Island Bagel Cafés operate in a substantially similar manner as the franchised business offered pursuant to this Disclosure Document; however, our affiliate-owned outlets are not subject to the same fees that a franchisee will experience. Item 6 of this disclosure document outlines the fees to which a franchisee will be subject. Specifically, a franchisee who achieved the same sales results that our affiliate-owned outlets achieved would incur the following fees which are not reflected in the above table:

Imputed Royalty and Brand Fund Contributions 2021 ^{1,3}		
	Royalty	Brand Development Fund Contribution
Oceanside Original Bagels, Inc.	\$214,333	\$42,867
Long Beach Bagel Inc.	\$148,991	\$29,798
Glen Cove Gourmet Bagels & Deli, Inc.	\$124,195	\$24,839
Bellmore Bagel Gourmet, Inc.	\$118,389	\$23,678
Nesconset Bagel Café LLC	\$104,218	\$20,844
Mineola Bagel Café LLC	\$99,879	\$19,976
Stony Brook Bagel Café	\$80,845	\$16,169
Scarsdale Bagel Café	\$76,391	\$15,278

¹ The figures in the above tables have not been audited.

² Gross Revenue means all revenue from sales of products and services at or from outlet operations, less (i) sales tax (ii) refunds to customers and (iii) discounts.

³ This Table does not include other expenses which you will incur such as local advertising, technology fees, and labor costs.

Some outlets have earned this amount. Your individual results may differ. There is no assurance that you'll earn as much.

We strongly urge you to consult with your financial advisor or personal accountant concerning the financial analysis that you should make in determining whether or not to purchase a Long Island Bagel Café franchise. You should conduct an independent investigation of the costs and expenses you will incur in operating your Café. Franchisees or former franchisees, listed in this Disclosure Document, may be one source of this information.

Written substantiation for the financial performance representation will be made available to the prospective franchisee upon reasonable request.

Other than the preceding financial performance representation, we do not make any representations about a franchisee's future financial performance or the past financial performance of company-owned or franchised outlets. We also do not authorize our employees or representatives to make any such representations either orally or in writing. If you are purchasing an existing outlet, however, we may provide you with the actual records of that outlet. If you receive any other financial performance information or projections of your future income, you should report it to the franchisor's management by contacting Randy Narod at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556, and 516-279-2300, the Federal Trade Commission, and the appropriate state regulatory agencies.

ITEM 20: OUTLETS AND FRANCHISEE INFORMATION

Table No. 1
Systemwide Outlet Summary
For years 2019 - 2021

Outlet Type	Year	Outlets at the Start of the Year	Outlets at the End of the Year	Net Change
Franchised	2019	0	0	0
	2020	0	1	+1
	2021	1	1	0
Company-Owned*	2019	8	7	-1
	2020	7	7	0
	2021	7	7	0
Total Outlets	2019	8	7	-1
	2020	7	8	+1
	2021	8	8	0

* The Company-Owned Outlets in the table above are owned by our affiliates. We have not included the Café in Baldwin, New York, because this Café is not representative of a typical Long Island Bagel Café.

Table No. 2
Transfers of Outlets from Franchisees to New Owners (other than the Franchisor)
For years 2019 - 2021

State	Year	Number of Transfers
None	2019	0
	2020	0
	2021	0
Total	2019	0
	2020	0
	2021	0

Table No. 3
Status of Franchised Outlets
For years 2019 - 2021

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Terminations	Non-Renewals	Reacquired by Franchisor	Ceased Operations – Other Reasons	Outlets at End of the Year
None	2019	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2020	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	2021	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	2019	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2020	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
	2021	1	0	0	0	0	0	1

Table No. 4
Status of Company-Owned Outlets
For years 2019 - 2021

State	Year	Outlets at Start of Year	Outlets Opened	Outlets Reacquired from Franchisee	Outlets Closed	Outlets Sold to Franchisee	Outlets at End of the Year
NY	2019	8	0	0	1	0	7
	2020	7	0	0	0	0	7
	2021	7	0	0	0	0	7
Total	2019	8	0	0	1	0	7
	2020	7	0	0	0	0	7
	2021	7	0	0	0	0	7

* The Company-Owned Outlets in the table above are owned by our affiliates. We have not included the Café in Baldwin, New York, because this Café is not representative of a typical Long Island Bagel Café.

Table No. 5
Projected Openings as of December 31, 2021

States	Franchise Agreements Signed But Outlet Not Opened	Projected New Franchised Outlets in the Next Fiscal Year	Projected New Company-Owned Outlets in the Next Fiscal Year
Connecticut	0	0	0
Florida	0	0	0
Illinois	0	0	0
Maryland	0	0	0
New York	0	1	0
North Carolina	0	0	0
Virginia	0	0	0
Total	0	1	0

A list of the names of all franchisees and multi-unit developers and the addresses and telephone numbers of their franchises will be provided in Exhibit F to this disclosure document when applicable.

The name, city, state and current business telephone number (or if unknown, the last known home telephone number) of every franchisee or multi-unit developer who had a franchise terminated, cancelled, not renewed or otherwise voluntarily or involuntarily ceased to do business under the applicable Agreement during the most recently completed fiscal year or who has not communicated with us within 10 weeks of the issuance date of this disclosure document will be listed on Exhibit F to this disclosure document when applicable. **If you buy this franchise, your contact information may be disclosed to other buyers when you leave the franchise system.**

During the last three fiscal years, we have not had any franchisees sign confidentiality provisions that would restrict their ability to speak openly about their experience with the Long Island Bagel Café System.

There are no trademark-specific organizations formed by our franchisees that are associated with the Long Island Bagel Café System.

ITEM 21: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Attached to this Disclosure Document as Exhibit D, is our audited balance sheet, statement of operations, member's equity, and cash flows for the period from September 18, 2020 (inception) through December 31, 2021.

We have not been in business for three years or more and cannot include all financial statements required for Item 21.

Our fiscal year ends on December 31.

ITEM 22: CONTRACTS

Attached as Exhibits to this Disclosure Document are the following contracts and their attachments:

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. | Franchise Agreement | Exhibit B |
| 2. | Multi-Unit Development Agreement | Exhibit C |

ITEM 23: RECEIPTS

Two copies of an acknowledgment of your receipt of this Disclosure Document appear at the end of the Disclosure Document. Please return one signed copy to us and retain the other for your records.

**Exhibit A to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

STATE ADMINISTRATORS/AGENTS FOR SERVICE OF PROCESS

This list includes the names, addresses and telephone numbers of state agencies having responsibility for franchising disclosure/registration laws, and serving as our agents for service of process (to the extent that we are registered in their states). This list also includes the names, addresses and telephone numbers of other agencies, companies or entities serving as our agents for service of process.

State	State Agency	Agent for Service of Process
CALIFORNIA	Commissioner of the Department of Financial Protection and Innovation Department of Financial Protection and Innovation 320 West 4 th Street, Suite 750 Los Angeles, CA 90013 (213) 576-7505 Toll-free (866-275-2677)	Commissioner of the Department of Financial Protection and Innovation
CONNECTICUT	State of Connecticut Department of Banking Securities & Business Investments Division 260 Constitution Plaza Hartford, CT 06103-1800 (860) 240-8230	Banking Commissioner
HAWAII	Business Registration Division Department of Commerce and Consumer Affairs 335 Merchant Street, Room 203 Honolulu, HI 96813 (808) 586-2722	Commissioner of Securities of the State of Hawaii
ILLINOIS	Office of Attorney General Franchise Division 500 South Second Street Springfield, IL 62706 (217) 782-4465	Illinois Attorney General
INDIANA	Indiana Secretary of State Securities Division 302 West Washington St., Room E-111 Indianapolis, IN 46204 (317) 232-6681	Indiana Secretary of State 201 State House Indianapolis, IN 46204
MARYLAND	Office of the Attorney General Division of Securities 200 St. Paul Place Baltimore, MD 21202-2020 (410) 576-6360	Maryland Securities Commissioner 200 St. Paul Place Baltimore, MD 21202-2020 (410) 576-6360
MICHIGAN	Michigan Department of Attorney General Consumer Protection Division Antitrust and Franchise Unit 670 Law Building Lansing, MI 48913 (517) 373-7117	Michigan Department of Commerce, Corporations and Securities Bureau

State	State Agency	Agent for Service of Process
MINNESOTA	Minnesota Department of Commerce 85 7 th Place East, Suite 280 St. Paul, MN 55101-2198 (651) 539-1500	Minnesota Commissioner of Commerce
NEW YORK	NYS Department of Law Investor Protection Bureau 28 Liberty St. 21st Fl New York, NY 10005 212-416-8222	Attention: New York Secretary of State New York Department of State One Commerce Plaza 99 Washington Avenue, 6 th Floor Albany, NY 11231-0001 (518) 473-2492
NORTH DAKOTA	North Dakota Securities Department 600 East Boulevard, 5 th Floor Bismarck, ND 58505-0510 (701) 328-4712	North Dakota Securities Commissioner
OREGON	Department of Consumer and Business Services Division of Finance and Corporate Labor and Industries Building Salem, Oregon 97310 (503) 378-4387	Director of the Department of Consumer and Business Services
RHODE ISLAND	Department of Business Regulation Division of Securities 1511 Pontiac Avenue, Building 69-1 Cranston, RI 02920 (401) 462-9585	Director of Rhode Island Department of Business Regulation
SOUTH DAKOTA	Division of Insurance Securities Regulation 124 South Euclid, Suite 104 Pierre, SD 57501 (605) 773-3563	Director of Insurance-Securities Regulation
VIRGINIA	State Corporation Commission Division of Securities and Retail Franchising 1300 East Main Street, 9 th Floor Richmond, VA 23219 (804) 371-9051	Clerk of State Corporation Commission 1300 East Main Street, 1 st Floor Richmond, VA 23219 (804) 371-9733
WASHINGTON	Department of Financial Institutions Securities Division P.O. Box 9033 Olympia, WA 98507-9033 (360) 902-8760	Director of Washington Financial Institutions Securities Division 150 Israel Road, SW Tumwater, WA 98501
WISCONSIN	Wisconsin Securities Commissioner Securities and Franchise Registration 345 W. Washington Avenue Madison, WI 53703 (608) 266-8559	Commissioner of Securities of Wisconsin

**Exhibit B to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1: GRANT	3
ARTICLE 2: SITE SELECTION, PLANS AND CONSTRUCTION	5
ARTICLE 3: TERM AND RENEWAL	7
ARTICLE 4: FEES	8
ARTICLE 5: OUR OBLIGATIONS	11
ARTICLE 6: YOUR AGREEMENTS, REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES AND COVENANTS..	12
ARTICLE 7: FRANCHISE OPERATIONS.....	16
ARTICLE 8: ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION	21
ARTICLE 9: MARKS	25
ARTICLE 10: CONFIDENTIALITY AND NON-COMPETITION COVENANTS	27
ARTICLE 11: BOOKS AND RECORDS	30
ARTICLE 12: INSURANCE.....	32
ARTICLE 13: DEBTS AND TAXES	34
ARTICLE 14: TRANSFER OF INTEREST	35
ARTICLE 15: INDEMNIFICATION.....	40
ARTICLE 16: RELATIONSHIP OF THE PARTIES	42
ARTICLE 17: TERMINATION.....	43
ARTICLE 18: POST-TERMINATION	47
ARTICLE 19: MISCELLANEOUS	51
ARTICLE 20: SECURITY INTERESTS	56
ARTICLE 21: TECHNOLOGY	58
ARTICLE 22: YOUR REPRESENTATIONS AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS.....	60

List of Attachments

- ATTACHMENT 1: FRANCHISEE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT STATEMENT
- ATTACHMENT 2: TERRITORY
- ATTACHMENT 3: COLLATERAL ASSIGNMENT OF LEASE
- ATTACHMENT 4: STATEMENT OF OWNERSHIP INTERESTS AND FRANCHISEE'S PRINCIPALS
- ATTACHMENT 5: CONFIDENTIALITY AND NON-COMPETITION AGREEMENT
- ATTACHMENT 6: ELECTRONIC TRANSFER AUTHORIZATION
- ATTACHMENT 7: INTERNET ADVERTISING, SOCIAL MEDIA AND TELEPHONE ACCOUNT AGREEMENT
- ATTACHMENT 8: GENERAL RELEASE
- ATTACHMENT 9: AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT CERTIFICATION
- ATTACHMENT 10: GUARANTY

FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

THIS FRANCHISE AGREEMENT (the “Agreement”) is being entered into this day of _____, (the “Effective Date”) by and between LIBC Franchise LLC, a New York limited liability company having its principal place of business at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556 (“we”, “us” or “our”), and _____, a _____ corporation/limited liability company/partnership, having its principal place of business at _____ (“you” or “your” or “Franchisee”) on the date this Agreement is executed by us below (the “Effective Date”).

W I T N E S S E T H:

WHEREAS, as the result of the expenditure of time, skill, effort and money, we and our affiliates have developed and own a unique and distinctive system (hereinafter “System”) relating to the establishment and operation of a quick-serve restaurant offering a menu that specializes in hand rolled, kettle cooked and baked bagels, made fresh daily, as well as a breakfast menu, lunch menu, and beverages (“Café” or “Franchised Business”) on a dine-in, take-out, and catering basis;

WHEREAS, the distinguishing characteristics of the System include, without limitation, distinctive exterior and interior design, décor, color scheme, and furnishings; proprietary products and ingredients; proprietary recipes and special menu items; uniform standards, specifications, and procedures for operations; quality and uniformity of products and services offered; procedures for inventory, management and financial control; training and assistance; and advertising and promotional programs; all of which may be changed, improved, and further developed by us from time to time;

WHEREAS, the System is identified by means of certain trade names, service marks, trademarks, logos, emblems and indicia of origin, including, but not limited to, the marks “Long Island Bagel Café” and “LIBC”, and such other trade names, service marks, and trademarks as are now designated (and may hereafter be designated by us in writing) for use in connection with the System (hereinafter referred to as “Marks”);

WHEREAS, we and our affiliates continue to develop, use and control the use of such Marks in order to identify for the public the source of services and products marketed thereunder and under the System, and to represent the System’s high standards of quality, appearance and service;

WHEREAS, you understand and acknowledge the importance of our high standards of quality, cleanliness, appearance and service and the necessity of operating the business franchised hereunder in conformity with our standards and specifications; and

WHEREAS, you desire to use the System in connection with the operation of a Café at the location accepted by us as herein provided, as well as to receive the training and other assistance provided by us in connection therewith.

NOW, THEREFORE, the parties, in consideration of the mutual undertakings and commitments set forth herein, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1: GRANT

1.1 Grant of Franchise

In reliance on the representations and warranties of you and your Principals (as defined in Section 19.17) hereunder, we hereby grant to you, upon the terms and conditions in this Agreement, the right and license, and you hereby accept the right and obligation, to operate a Long Island Bagel Café under the Marks and the System in accordance with this Agreement. You and the Principals have represented to us that you have entered into this Agreement with the intention to comply fully with the obligations to construct a Café hereunder and not for the purpose of reselling the rights to develop the Café hereunder. You and the Principals understand and acknowledge that we have granted such rights in reliance on the business skill, financial capacity, personal character of, and expectations of performance hereunder by, you and the Principals and that this Agreement and the rights and obligations hereunder may not be transferred until after the Café is open for business to the public in accordance with Section 2.6, and then only in accordance with Article 14 hereof. You are strictly prohibited from selling any products at wholesale.

1.2 Accepted Location

The specific street address of the Café location accepted by us shall be set forth in Attachment 2 (“Location” or “Accepted Location”) when such Location is determined. You shall not relocate the Café without our express prior written consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. This Agreement does not grant to you the right or license to operate the Café or to offer or sell any products or services described under this Agreement at or from any location other than the Accepted Location.

1.3 Relocation

If you are unable to continue the operation of the Café at the Accepted Location because of the occurrence of a force majeure event (as described in Section 17.1.3(e)), then you may request our approval to relocate the Café to another location in the Protected Territory, as that term is defined below, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld. Any other relocation outside the Protected Territory or a relocation of the Café not caused by force majeure shall also be subject to our prior approval. If we elect to grant you the right to relocate the Café, then you shall comply with the site selection and construction procedures set forth in Article 2. Upon our approval of your relocation request, you must reimburse the expenses we incurred related to your request, including site review expenses and legal fees, up to a maximum of Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000).

1.4 Protected Territory

Upon the execution of this Agreement or when the Accepted Location is determined, whichever occurs later, you may be assigned a territory (the “Protected Territory”) that will also be described in Attachment 2. You understand and acknowledge that if your Accepted Location is a Non-Traditional Site (as described in Section 1.5 below), you will not receive a Protected Territory.

Except as provided in this Agreement, and subject to your and the Principals’ material compliance with this Agreement, any other agreement among you or any of your affiliates (defined for the purposes hereof as any entity that is controlled by, controlling or under common control with such other entity) and us, we shall not establish or authorize any other person or entity, other than you, to establish a Café in the Protected Territory during the term of this Agreement and any extensions hereof. You acknowledge and understand that the rights granted hereunder pertain only to the establishment of a Café. You acknowledge and agree that our affiliates currently operate, or may in the future operate, restaurants under different marks and with operating systems that are the same as or similar to the System, and that any such restaurants might compete with your Café. You further agree and acknowledge that the license granted hereby is only for the operation of one (1) Café and only at a location accepted by us.

1.5 Our Reserved Rights

1.5.1 Nothing in this Agreement will prohibit us from: (a) operating and/or franchising others to operate restaurants identified in whole or in part by the Proprietary Marks and/or utilizing the System in the Protected Territory that are located in gas stations or convenience stores; transportation facilities, including airports, train stations, subways and rail and bus stations; military bases and government offices; sports facilities, including stadiums and arenas; amusement parks, zoos and convention centers; car and truck rest stops and travel centers; educational facilities; recreational theme parks; hospitals; business or industrial foodservice venues; venues in which foodservice is or may be provided by a master concessionaire or contract foodservice provider; Indian reservations; casinos; or any similar captive market location not reasonably available to you (“Non-Traditional Site”); (b) awarding national, regional or local licenses to third parties to sell products under the Proprietary Marks in foodservice facilities primarily identified by the third party’s trademark; (c) merchandising and distributing products identified by the Proprietary Marks in the Protected Territory through any method or channel of distribution other than through the operation of a Café, including distribution of proprietary products through grocery stores, club stores and similar stores; (d) selling and distributing products identified by the Proprietary Marks in the Protected Territory to restaurants other than Cafés identified by the Proprietary Marks, provided those restaurants are not licensed to use the Proprietary Marks in connection with their retail sales; (e) selling products and services through other channels of distribution, including the internet, wholesale, mail order and catalogue; (f) developing and/or owning other franchise systems for the same or similar products and services using trade names and trademarks other than the Proprietary Marks; and (g) purchasing, being purchased by, merging or combining with, businesses that we deem to offer direct competition to Long Island Bagel Cafés.

1.5.2 You understand and acknowledge that if any Non-Traditional Site (as described above) is located within the physical boundaries of your Protected Territory, then the premises of this Non-Traditional Site will not be included in your Protected Territory and you will have no rights to this Non-Traditional Site.

1.5.3 This Section 1.5 does not prohibit us or our affiliates from: (a) operating and franchising others to operate, during the Initial Term, Long Island Bagel Cafés at any location outside of the Protected Territory; (b) operating and franchising others to operate, after this Agreement terminates or expires, Long Island Bagel Cafés at any location, including locations inside the Protected Territory; and (c) operating and franchising others to operate at any location, during or after the Initial Term, any type of restaurant other than a Long Island Bagel Café.

1.5.4 The restrictions contained in this Section do not apply to Long Island Bagel Cafés in operation, under lease or construction or other commitment to open in the Protected Territory as of the Effective Date.

1.5.5 Except as expressly limited by this Section 1.5, we and our affiliates have the right to conduct any business activities, under any name, in any geographic area and at any location, regardless of the proximity to the Café or the economic effect on your Café or activities under this Agreement.

1.6 Forms of Agreement

You acknowledge that, over time, we have entered, and will continue to enter, into agreements with other franchisees that may contain provisions, conditions and obligations that differ from those contained in this Agreement. The existence of different forms of agreement and the fact that we and other franchisees may have different rights and obligations does not affect our or your duties to comply with the terms of this Agreement.

ARTICLE 2: SITE SELECTION, PLANS AND CONSTRUCTION

2.1 Your Responsibility to Locate a Site

You assume all cost, liability, expense and responsibility for locating, obtaining and developing a site for the Café within the Protected Territory, and for constructing and equipping the Café at such site. You shall not make any binding commitment to a prospective vendor or lessor of real estate with respect to a site for the Café unless the site is accepted by us as set forth below. You acknowledge that the location, selection, procurement and development of a site for the Café is your responsibility; that in discharging such responsibility you shall consult with real estate and other professionals of your choosing, unless we designate a supplier for these services; and that our approval of a prospective site and the rendering of assistance in the selection of a site does not constitute a representation, promise, warranty or guarantee, express or implied, by us that the Café operated at that site will be profitable or otherwise successful.

2.2 Site Selection

2.2.1 If you do not already have possession of a location that we have accepted upon your execution of this Agreement, then within one hundred eighty (180) days of the date this Agreement is executed you shall locate a site for the Café that satisfies the site selection guidelines provided to you by us pursuant to Section 5.1 and submit to us in the form specified by us a description of the site, including evidence reasonably satisfactory to us demonstrating that the site satisfies our site selection guidelines, together with such other information and materials as we may reasonably require, including, but not limited to, a letter of intent or other evidence satisfactory to us which confirms your favorable prospects for obtaining the site. We shall have thirty (30) days after receipt of this information and materials to accept or decline, in our sole discretion, the proposed site as the location for the Café. We may, if we determine it is necessary, conduct one (1) on-site evaluation of the proposed location for the Café. No site may be used for the location of the Café unless it is first accepted in writing by us. You acknowledge and agree that our acceptance of a location for the Café is not a warranty or guaranty, express or implied, that you will achieve any particular level of success at the location or that your Café will be profitable. Our acceptance of a location for the Café only signifies that the location meets our then-current minimum criteria for a Long Island Bagel Café. We reserve the right to approve deviations from our site selection standards based on the individual factors and components of a particular site, but any such approvals shall be granted in our sole discretion. If you are unable to locate a site for your Café within one hundred eighty (180) days after this Agreement is executed, and provided you can provide evidence to us that you have been diligently looking for a suitable site, we may provide you with an extension of up to an additional one hundred eighty (180) days. Additional extensions may be granted in our sole discretion. We also have the right to terminate this Agreement if we determine you have not been actively searching for a suitable location.

2.2.2 If you elect to purchase the premises for the Café, you shall submit a copy of the proposed contract of sale to us for our written approval prior to its execution and shall furnish to us a copy of the executed contract of sale within ten (10) days after execution. If you will occupy the premises of the Café under a lease or sublease, you shall submit a copy of the lease or sublease to us for written acceptance prior to its execution and shall furnish to us a copy of the executed lease or sublease within ten (10) days after execution. No lease or sublease for the Café premises shall be accepted by us unless a Collateral Assignment of Lease, prepared by us and executed by us, you and the lessor or sublessor, in substantially the form attached as Attachment 3, is attached to the lease and incorporated therein. We shall have ten (10) days after receipt of the lease, sublease or the proposed contract of sale to either accept or decline such documentation prior to its execution. If we do not provide our specific approval of the lease, sublease or contract of sale within this ten (10) day period, then it shall be deemed not accepted.

2.2.3 After we have accepted the location for your Café and that Accepted Location is acquired by you pursuant to this Agreement, the Accepted Location and your Protected Territory shall be described in Attachment 2.

2.3 Zoning Clearances, Permits and Licenses

You shall be responsible for obtaining all zoning classifications and clearances which may be required by state or local laws, ordinances or regulations or which may be necessary as a result of any restrictive covenants relating to the Accepted Location. Prior to beginning the construction of the Café, you shall (i) obtain all permits, licenses and certifications required for the lawful construction or remodeling and operation of the Café, and (ii) certify in writing to us that the insurance coverage specified in Article 12 is in full force and effect (or provide us with a certificate of insurance evidencing coverage) and that all required approvals, clearances, permits and certifications have been obtained. Upon written request, you shall provide to us additional copies of your insurance policies or certificates of insurance and copies of all such approvals, clearances, permits and certifications.

2.4 Design of Café

You must obtain any architectural, engineering and design services required for the construction of the Café at your own expense from an architectural design firm approved or designated by us. You shall adapt the prototypical architectural and design plans and specifications for construction of the Café provided to you by us in accordance with Section 5.3 as necessary for the construction of the Café and shall submit such adapted plans to us for our review. Such plans must comply with applicable laws (including the Americans with Disabilities Act), ordinances and building codes for the city and state in which the Café will be located. If we determine, in our reasonable discretion, that any such plans are not consistent with the best interests of the System, we may prohibit the implementation of such plans, and in this event will notify you of any objection(s) within ten (10) days of receiving such plans. If we fail to notify you of an objection to the plans within this time period, you may use such plans. If we object to any such plans, we shall provide you with a reasonably detailed list of changes necessary to make the plans acceptable. We shall, upon a re-submission of the plans with such changes, notify you within ten (10) days of receiving the resubmitted plans whether the plans are acceptable. If we fail to notify you in writing of any objection within such time period, you may use the resubmitted plans. You acknowledge that our review of such plans relates only to compliance with the System and that acceptance by us of such plans does not constitute a representation, warranty, or guarantee, express or implied, by us that such plans are accurate or free of error concerning their design or structural application, or that such plans comply with any laws, ordinances or building codes applicable to the Accepted Location.

2.5 Build-Out of Café

You shall commence and diligently pursue construction or remodeling (as applicable) of the Café; provided, however, that you shall commence construction of your Café not later than one hundred twenty (120) days after you execute this Agreement. Commencement of construction shall be defined as the time at which any site work is initiated by you or on your behalf at the location accepted for the Café. Site work includes, without limitation, paving of parking areas, installing outdoor lighting and sidewalks, extending utilities, demising of interior walls and demolishing of any existing premises. During the time of construction or remodeling, you shall provide us with such periodic reports regarding the progress of the construction or remodeling as may be reasonably requested by us. In addition, we may make such on-site inspections as we may deem reasonably necessary to evaluate such progress. You shall notify us of the scheduled date for completion of construction or remodeling no later than thirty (30) days prior to such date. Within a reasonable time after the date of completion of construction or remodeling, we may, at our option, conduct an inspection of the completed Café. You acknowledge and agree that you will not open the Café for business without our written authorization and that authorization to open shall be conditioned

upon your strict compliance with this Agreement and your certification to us, in the form attached hereto as Attachment 9, that the Café has been constructed in compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act.

2.6 Opening Date; Time is of the Essence

You acknowledge that time is of the essence. Subject to your compliance with the conditions stated below, you shall open the Café and commence business not later than eighteen (18) months after the date you execute this Agreement. The date the Café actually opens for business to the public is herein called the “Opening Date”. Prior to opening, you shall complete all exterior and interior preparations for the Café, including installation of equipment, fixtures, furnishings and signs, pursuant to the plans and specifications reasonably approved by us, and shall comply with all of your other pre-opening obligations, including, but not limited to, those obligations described in Sections 6.2 through 6.7, to our reasonable satisfaction. If you fail to reasonably comply with any of such obligations, except for delay caused by a force majeure event as described in Section 17.1.3(e), we shall have the right to prohibit you from commencing business. Prior to opening the Franchised Business, and before any renovation to the Franchised Business, you shall execute an Americans with Disabilities Act Certification in the form attached to this Agreement as Attachment 9 that certifies in writing to us that the Franchised Business and any proposed renovations comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act. If you are unable to open your Café within eighteen (18) months after you execute this Agreement, we may reduce or eliminate your Protected Territory, or we may terminate this Agreement.

ARTICLE 3: TERM AND RENEWAL

3.1 Term

Unless sooner terminated as provided in Article 17 hereof, the term of this Agreement shall continue from the date stated on the first page hereof for a period of ten (10) years (“Initial Term”).

3.2 Renewal

If you satisfy each of the requirements set forth below, you may renew this Agreement for up to two (2) additional terms of ten (10) years each.

3.2.1 You shall have been, throughout the Initial Term of this Agreement (and any previous and then-current renewal term, as the case may be), in substantial compliance, and at the expiration of such Initial Term (and any previous and then-current renewal term, as the case may be) are in full compliance, with this Agreement, your lease or sublease and all other agreements between you and us or companies or persons associated or affiliated with us.

3.2.2 You shall, not later than twelve (12)) months before the expiration of the Initial Term or then-current renewal term, as the case may be, provide written notice to us that you wish to renew this Agreement, and we, in turn, shall provide you with any documents that you are required to execute for the renewal term, which documents may include, but are not limited to, a general release, our then-current Franchise Agreement and all other ancillary agreements, instruments and documents then customarily used by us in the granting of Long Island Bagel Café franchises (all of which will contain terms and fees substantially the same as those included in Franchise Agreements being executed at the time of renewal, and which will not obligate you to pay a further initial franchise fee, but will require payment of the then-current renewal fee) (the “Renewal Franchise Documents”).

3.2.3 You shall execute the Renewal Franchise Documents and all other documents and instruments that we require in order to renew this Agreement. You shall return the executed Renewal

Franchise Documents to us, together with payment of a renewal fee equal to fifty percent (50%) of our then-current initial franchise fee for a single unit franchise, by no later than the expiration date of the Initial Term. If we do not receive the executed documents and renewal fee by such expiration date, then this Agreement shall expire, you shall have no further rights under this Agreement, and you shall comply with the provisions of Article 18 and any other provisions that survive termination or expiration of this Agreement.

3.2.4 After we have received from you all executed Renewal Franchise Documents and the renewal fee, we shall inspect your Café to determine the extent of any required updating, remodeling, redecorating or other refurbishment for the Restaurant in order to bring the Café up to our then-current image and standards for new Long Island Bagel Cafés. We will provide notice to you of the modifications you shall be required to make, and you shall have six (6) months from the date of such notice to effectuate such modifications. If you fail or refuse to make the required modifications, we shall have the right to terminate the Renewal Franchise Documents.

3.3 Refusal to Renew Franchise Agreement

We can refuse to renew your franchise if your lease, sublease or other document by which you have the right to occupy the Accepted Location is not extended before your renewal term is to take effect to cover the period of the renewal or if you do not have a written commitment from your landlord to renew the lease or sublease for a period at least equal to the renewal term. We may also refuse to renew your franchise under other circumstances, including, but not limited to, your failure to substantially comply with the terms of this Agreement, your failure to pay amounts owed to us when due, or your failure to cure of any defaults incurred during the initial term of this Agreement, if applicable.

3.4 Renewal Under Law

Even though we decline the renewal of your franchise, it is possible that we can be required to renew it under a law, rule, regulation, statute, ordinance, or legal order that is applicable at the time. If that happens, to the extent it is allowed by the applicable law, rule, regulation, statute, ordinance or order, your renewal term will be subject to the conditions of the Franchise Agreement we are using for new franchisees at the time the renewal period begins. If we are not then offering new franchises, your renewal period will be subject to the terms in the then-current Franchise Agreement that we indicate. If for any reason that is not allowed, the renewal term will be governed by the terms of this Agreement.

3.5 Your Election Not to Renew

For the purposes hereof, you shall be deemed to have irrevocably elected not to renew the Franchise hereunder (and the option to do so shall thereupon terminate) if you fail to execute and return to us any of the Renewal Franchise Documents required by us for a renewal franchise, together with payment of our then-current renewal fee, or if you provide written notice to us within the final sixty (60) days of the Initial Term or then-current renewal term, as the case may be, indicating that you do not wish to renew this Agreement.

ARTICLE 4: FEES

4.1 Initial Franchise Fee

You shall pay to us an initial franchise fee of Thirty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$35,000) which shall be paid upon the execution of this Agreement. The amount of the initial franchise fee when so paid shall be deemed fully earned in consideration of the administrative and other expenses incurred by us in granting the franchise hereunder and for our lost or deferred opportunity to grant such franchise to any other party. The initial franchise fee is not refundable under any circumstances.

4.1.1 If you are a qualified United States veteran, the initial franchise fee for your first Café only will be reduced by Five Thousand Dollars (\$5,000), to Thirty Thousand Dollars (\$30,000).

4.1.2 If this Agreement is being executed pursuant to a multi-unit development agreement between you (as multi-unit developer) and us, the initial franchise fees for your second (2nd) and later Cafés shall be as set forth in such multi-unit development agreement, and the balance of the initial franchise fee is payable upon execution of this Agreement.

4.2 Royalty Fee

4.2.1 During the term of this Agreement, you shall pay to us, in partial consideration for the rights herein granted, a continuing weekly royalty fee equal to five percent (5%) of Gross Sales (“Royalty Fee”). Such Royalty Fee shall be due and payable on Wednesday of each week based on the Gross Sales for the preceding week ending Sunday, provided that such day is a business day. If the date on which such payments would otherwise be due is not a business day, then payment shall be due on the next business day.

4.2.2 Each such Royalty Fee shall be preceded by a royalty report itemizing the Gross Sales for the preceding week ending Sunday (“Royalty Report”) and any other reports required hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, you shall provide us with such Royalty Report by Tuesday of each week by modem or, if not reasonably available, by facsimile transmission or such other method of delivery as we may reasonably direct. As stated herein, we have the right to poll your computer system directly to obtain such Gross Sales information, but this does not diminish your responsibility to provide us with the required Royalty Report.

4.2.3 If any state imposes a sales or other tax on the Royalty Fees, then we have the right to collect this tax from you.

4.3 Brand Development Fee

4.3.1 In addition to the Royalty Fee described in Section 4.2 above, you agree to pay to us a Brand Development Fee equal to one percent (1%) of the Café’s Gross Sales. The Brand Development Fee shall be payable once the Brand Development Fund is established and shall be contributed to a Brand Development Fund maintained by us, as described in Section 8.3 below. The Brand Development Fee is payable to us at the same time and in the same manner as the Royalty Fee.

4.3.2 We may periodically receive allowances, rebates or other payments from approved suppliers based on purchases from such suppliers by our franchisees, and we may elect to contribute such allowances, rebates or other payments to the Brand Development Fund. You understand and acknowledge, however, that any such contribution of these amounts by us to the Brand Development Fund does not in any manner diminish or eliminate your obligation to pay the Brand Development Fee.

4.4 Payments to Us

By executing this Agreement, you agree that we shall have the right to withdraw funds from your designated bank account by electronic funds transfer (“EFT”) in the amount of the Royalty Fee, Brand Development Fee, and any other payments due to us and/or our affiliates. If you do not provide the Royalty Report when required, we may debit your account for one hundred twenty percent (120%) of the last Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee that we debited. If the Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee we debit are less than the Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee you actually owe to us, once we have been able to determine the Restaurant’s true and correct Gross Sales, we will debit your account for the

balance on a day we specify. If the Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee we debit are greater than the Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee you actually owe, we will credit the excess against the amount we otherwise would debit from your account during the following week. You shall, upon execution of this Agreement or at any time thereafter at our request, execute such documents or forms as we or your bank determine are necessary for us to process EFTs from your designated bank account for the payments due hereunder. If payments are not received when due, interest may be charged by us in accordance with Section 4.5 below. Upon written notice to you, you may be required to pay such fees directly to us in lieu of EFT, at our sole discretion.

4.6 Interest on Overdue Amounts

You shall not be entitled to withhold payments due us under this Agreement on grounds of alleged non-performance by us hereunder. Any payment or report not actually received by us on or before its due date shall be deemed overdue. Time is of the essence with respect to all payments to be made by you to us. All unpaid obligations under this Agreement shall bear interest from the date due until paid at the lesser of (i) eighteen percent (18%) per annum; or (ii) the maximum rate allowed by applicable law. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, no provision of this Agreement shall require the payment or permit the collection of interest in excess of the maximum rate allowed by applicable law. If any excess of interest is provided for herein or shall be adjudicated to be so provided in this Agreement, the provisions of this paragraph shall govern and prevail, and neither you nor your Principals shall be obligated to pay the excess amount of such interest. If for any reason interest in excess of the maximum rate allowed by applicable law shall be deemed charged, required or permitted, any such excess shall be applied as a payment and reduction of any other amounts which may be due and owing hereunder, and if no such amounts are due and owing hereunder then such excess shall be repaid to the party that paid such interest.

4.6 Definition of Gross Sales

“Gross Sales” shall mean the total selling price of all services and products and all income of every other kind and nature related to the Café, whether for cash or credit and regardless of collection in the case of credit. If a cash shortage occurs, the amount of Gross Sales will be determined based on the records of the point of sale system and any cash shortage will not be considered in the determination. Gross Sales expressly excludes taxes collected from your customers and paid to the appropriate taxing authority and customer refunds or adjustments.

4.7 Insufficient Funds Fee

If there are not sufficient funds in your account to permit us to debit the account for the payments you owe us, you will pay to us an insufficient funds fee equal to Fifty Dollars (\$50). This fee is in addition to interest on any overdue amount, as described in Section 4.5 above, and any fees charged by your bank. If you incur three (3) insufficient funds fees within any twelve (12) month period, we may terminate this Agreement without providing you the opportunity to cure the default.

4.8 Software Fee

You must pay to us certain point of sale system software fees (“Software Fee”) for the third party point of sale software that you are required to utilize in the operation of your Café and that we collect on behalf of such third party supplier. As of the date of this Agreement, the Software Fee we collect is Two Hundred Dollars (\$200) per month for the required point of sale system software. You understand and acknowledge that (a) we do not determine the fees for the required software and any increases in such fees are not within our control; (b) such fees are subject to change at the approved supplier’s discretion; (c) we reserve the right, in our sole discretion, to modify the software you are required to use in the operation of the Café and such modification may result in higher fees that may be payable to us or directly to the approved supplier; and (d) we or the third party supplier reserve the right to require you to pay this Software

Fee directly to the third party supplier. You further understand and acknowledge that the Software Fee payable herein do not necessarily represent all software fees you must pay for required software, and that additional fees may be payable to approved suppliers for other software you are required to utilize in your Franchised Business. The Software Fee is payable to us on the first Wednesday of each month, together with the Royalty Fee, and is payable by EFT unless we designate another method of payment.

4.9 Payment of Additional Fees

You shall pay such other fees or amounts described in this Agreement.

ARTICLE 5: OUR OBLIGATIONS

We agree to provide the services described below with regard to the Café:

5.1 Site Selection Guidelines

We will provide our written site selection guidelines and such site selection assistance as we may deem advisable.

5.2 On-Site Evaluation

We will, if we deem it necessary, conduct one (1) on-site evaluation of a site that you propose to us for your Café, provided that we have received all required information and materials concerning such site prepared pursuant to Article 2.

5.3 Design Plans

We will provide, on loan, one (1) set of prototypical architectural and design plans and specifications for a Café. You shall, at your expense, have such architectural and design plans and specifications adapted for construction of the Café in accordance with Article 2 using an architect or design that we have approved or designated.

5.4 Confidential Operations Manual

We will provide, on loan, our Confidential Operations Manual and such other manuals and written materials as we shall have developed for use in the Franchised Business (as the same may be revised by us from time to time, the “Manual”), as more fully described in Section 10.1. The Manual may, in our discretion, be provided electronically or via an intranet website for all Long Island Bagel Cafés in the System.

5.5 Visits and Evaluations

We will visit the Café and evaluate the products sold and services rendered therein from time to time as reasonably determined by us, as more fully described in Section 7.5.6.

5.6 Advertising and Promotional Materials

We shall have the right to review and approve or disapprove all advertising and promotional materials that you propose to use, pursuant to Article 8.

5.7 Management and Operations Advice

We will provide advice and written materials concerning techniques of managing and operating the Café from time to time developed by us, including new developments and improvements in Café equipment, food products and the packaging and preparation thereof, and menu items. Notwithstanding the foregoing,

you understand and acknowledge that we reserve the right, in our sole discretion, to grant to certain Long Island Bagel Cafés variances from our standard menu to accommodate regional or local tastes or ingredients. Nothing in this Agreement requires us to grant to you a similar variance.

5.8 Products for Resale

From time to time and at our reasonable discretion, at a reasonable cost, we may make available for resale to your customers certain merchandise identifying the System, such as logoed merchandise and memorabilia, and other proprietary products in sufficient amounts to meet customer demand. We may specify that you must purchase such merchandise from us, our affiliate, or another designated supplier.

5.9 Approved Suppliers

We will provide a list of approved suppliers as described in Section 7.4 from time to time as we deem appropriate.

5.10 Initial Training Program

We will provide an initial training program for up to five (5) people, as well as other training programs in accordance with the provisions of Section 6.4.

5.11 Opening Assistance

We will provide on-site opening assistance at the Café in accordance with the provisions of Section 6.4.

5.12 Brand Development Fund

We will establish and administer a brand development fund in accordance with Article 8.

ARTICLE 6: YOUR AGREEMENTS, REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES AND COVENANTS

6.1 Use Commercially Reasonable Efforts

Each of you and the Principals covenants and agrees that they shall make all commercially reasonable efforts to operate the Café so as to achieve optimum sales.

6.2 Representations of Corporate Entity

If you are a corporation, limited liability company, or partnership, you and the Principals represent, warrant and covenant that:

6.2.1 You are duly organized and validly existing under the state law of your formation;

6.2.2 You are duly qualified and are authorized to do business in each jurisdiction in which your business activities or the nature of the properties owned by you require such qualification;

6.2.3 Your corporate charter, operating agreement, or written partnership agreement shall at all times provide that your activities are confined exclusively to the operation of the Café, unless otherwise consented to in writing by us;

6.2.4 The execution of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby are within your corporate power, if you are a corporation, or if you are a limited

liability company, permitted under your operating agreement, or if you are a partnership, permitted under your written partnership agreement and have been duly authorized by you;

6.2.5 If you are a corporation or a limited liability company, copies of your articles of incorporation, bylaws, operating agreement, other governing documents, any amendments thereto, resolutions of the Board of Directors authorizing entry into and performance of this Agreement, and any certificates, buy-sell agreements or other documents restricting the sale or transfer of stock of the corporation, and any other documents as may be reasonably required by us shall be furnished to us prior to the execution of this Agreement; or, if you are a partnership, copies of your written partnership agreement, other governing documents and any amendments thereto shall be furnished to us prior to the execution of this Agreement, including evidence of consent or approval of the entry into and performance of this Agreement by the requisite number or percentage of partners, if such approval or consent is required by your written partnership agreement;

6.2.6 If you are a corporation, partnership or other form of legal entity other than an individual, the ownership interests in you are accurately and completely described in Attachment 4. Further, if you are a corporation, you shall maintain at all times a current list of all owners of record and all beneficial owners of any class of voting securities in you or, if you are a partnership or other form of legal entity, you shall maintain at all times a current list of all owners of an interest in the partnership or entity. You shall immediately provide a copy of the updated list of all Principals to us upon the occurrence of any change of ownership and otherwise make your list of Principals available to us upon reasonable written request;

6.2.7 If you are a corporation, you shall maintain stop-transfer instructions against the transfer on your records of any of equity securities and each stock certificate representing stock of the corporation shall have conspicuously endorsed upon it a statement in a form satisfactory to us that it is held subject to all restrictions imposed upon assignments by this Agreement. If you are a partnership or limited liability company, your written agreement shall provide that ownership of an interest in the entity is held subject to all restrictions imposed upon assignments by this Agreement;

6.2.8 You must have provided us with your most recent financial statements. Such financial statements present fairly your financial position, at the dates indicated therein and with respect to you, the results of your operations and your cash flow for the years then ended. You agree that you shall maintain at all times, during the term of this Agreement, sufficient working capital to fulfill your obligations under this Agreement. Each of the financial statements mentioned above shall be certified as true, complete and correct and shall have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to the respective periods involved and, except as expressly described in the applicable notes, applied on a consistent basis. No material liabilities, adverse claims, commitments or obligations of any nature exist as of the date of this Agreement, whether accrued, unliquidated, absolute, contingent or otherwise, which are not reflected as liabilities on your financial statements.

6.2.9 If, after the execution of this Agreement, any person ceases to qualify as one of your Principals (defined in Section 19.17) or if any individual succeeds to or otherwise comes to occupy a position which would, upon designation by us, qualify him as one of your Principals, you shall notify us within ten (10) days after any such change and, upon designation of such person by us as one of your Principals as the case may be, such person shall execute such documents and instruments (including, as applicable, this Agreement) as may be required by us to be executed by others in such positions;

6.2.10 Your Principals shall each execute and bind themselves to the confidentiality and non-competition covenants set forth in the Confidentiality and Non-Competition Agreement which forms Attachment 5 to this Agreement (see Sections 10.2.2 and 10.3.4). The Principals shall, jointly and severally, guarantee your performance of all of your obligations, covenants and agreements hereunder pursuant to the

terms and conditions of the guaranty contained herein, and shall otherwise bind themselves to the terms of this Agreement as stated herein; and

6.2.11 You and the Principals acknowledge and agree that the representations, warranties and covenants set forth above in Sections 6.2.1 through 6.2.10 are continuing obligations of you and the Principals, as applicable, and that any failure to comply with such representations, warranties and covenants shall constitute a material event of default under this Agreement. You and the Principals will cooperate with us in any efforts made by us to verify compliance with such representations, warranties and covenants.

6.3 Café Management

You, if you are an individual, or one (1) of your Principals, shall make sure that your Café is being operated according to the terms of this Agreement and the Manual. You shall designate and retain at all times a general manager (“General Manager”), who may be you or one of your Principals, to direct the operation and management of the Café. If you or one of your Principals does not act as your General Manager, then your General Manager shall be a full-time employee, must have successfully completed our training program, and have been certified by us. We reserve the right require certain other of your managers to be certified by us. At all times while your Café is open and operating, at least one (1) certified managers shall be on-site at your Café. The General Manager shall, during the entire period he/she serves as General Manager, meet the following qualifications:

6.3.1 The General Manager shall satisfy our educational and business experience criteria as set forth in the Manual as defined herein or otherwise in writing by us;

6.3.2 The General Manager shall devote full time and best efforts to the supervision and management of the Café;

6.3.3 The General Manager shall be an individual acceptable to us; and

6.3.4 The General Manager shall satisfy the training requirements set forth in Section 6.4. If, during the term of this Agreement, the General Manager is not able to continue to serve in such capacity or no longer qualifies to act as such in accordance with this Section, you shall promptly (not later than seven (7) days after the event) notify us and designate a replacement within thirty (30) days after the General Manager ceases to serve, such replacement being subject to the same qualifications listed above (including completing all training and obtaining all certifications required by us). You shall provide for interim management of the Café until such replacement is so designated, such interim management to be conducted in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Any failure to materially comply with the requirements of this Section 6.3 shall be deemed a material event of default under Section 17.1.3(o) hereof.

6.4 Training; Opening Assistance

You agree that it is necessary to the continued operation of the System and the Café that your personnel receive such training as we may reasonably require, and accordingly agree as follows:

6.4.1 (a) Not later than thirty (30) days prior to the scheduled opening of the Café, up to five (5) trainees shall have completed, to our reasonable satisfaction, our initial training program, including classroom training and training in an operating Café at such location(s) as may be designated by us. Your trainees must include you or one of your Principals and your General Manager. If you request that we provide our initial training program to any additional trainees, you shall pay our then-current, per person training fee for each additional trainee. You shall be responsible for any and all expenses incurred by your trainees in connection with any initial training program, including, without limitation, costs of travel, lodging, meals and applicable wages.

(b) We shall determine, in our reasonable discretion, whether you or your Principal and your General Manager have satisfactorily completed initial training. If the initial training program is (i) not completed within the timeframe required by us, (ii) not satisfactorily completed by you, your Principal, or the General Manager, or (iii) if we in our reasonable business judgment, based upon the performance of you, your Principal, or the General Manager, determine that the training program cannot be satisfactorily completed by any such person, you shall designate a replacement to satisfactorily complete such training at your expense, including payment of our then-current training fee. If you, the replacement Principal or General Manager cannot complete the initial training program to our satisfaction, we have the right to terminate this Agreement. Any General Manager subsequently designated by you shall also receive and complete such initial training before you will be permitted to open your Café.

(c) Any manager subsequently designated by you must also receive and complete the initial training program to our satisfaction, even if this requires sending that manager to our headquarters training program, at your expense. We reserve the right to charge a reasonable fee for the initial training we provide to a replacement or successor employee if we have not approved you to provide the training. You must also pay for all expenses you, your managers and other personnel incur for any training program, including costs of travel, lodging, meals and applicable wages. We may approve you to train replacement managers under our training program before permitting you to train your entire staff, if this Agreement is for your third or later Café. You may not train any personnel until we have approved you as a trainer.

6.4.2 In connection with the opening of the Café, we shall provide you with one (1) of our representatives to provide on-site opening assistance and training for up to one (1) week around your Café opening. Such on-site opening assistance shall be provided at our expense, but if you request that our representative provide additional days of on-site assistance, you agree to pay all expenses our representative incurs while providing the additional days of assistance, including, without limitation, our then-current per diem fee and any additional travel, lodging and meals expenses.

6.4.3 Upon your reasonable request or if we determine that additional training or assistance is necessary, we shall, during the term hereof and subject to the availability of personnel, provide you with additional trained representatives who shall provide on-site remedial training and assistance to your Café personnel. For this additional training and assistance, you shall pay the per diem fee then being charged to franchisees under the System for the services of such trained representatives, plus their costs of travel, lodging, and meals.

6.4.4 We reserve the right to conduct additional or refresher training programs, seminars and other related activities regarding the operation of the Café. Such training programs and seminars may be offered to you, your managers or other Café personnel generally, and we may designate that such training programs and seminars are mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. We do not anticipate charging a fee for each trainee attending refresher training, but you will pay for all of the expenses incurred by your trainees, including travel, lodging, meals and wages.

6.4.5 We require each of your managers and additional employees we designate to maintain industry certifications from an approved food safety and handling program (ServSafe or a similar program). These training and certification programs will be at your sole expense, including program fees, travel, lodging, meals and applicable wages. Recertification may be necessary based on the specific requirements of each industry certification program.

6.5 Franchisee Meetings

We reserve the right to hold meetings for all franchisees and other Long Island Bagel Café operators, which meetings shall not occur more frequently than annually. We shall not be required to hold such meetings until we believe it is prudent to do so. These meetings may be used to provide additional training, introduce new products or changes to the System, or for other reasons. We reserve the right to designate that attendance at any franchisee meeting is mandatory for you, your General Manager and/or other Café personnel. We do not anticipate charging a fee for each attendee at the meeting, but you will pay for all of the expenses incurred by your attendees at the meeting, including travel, lodging, meals and wages.

6.6 Compliance with Laws

You shall comply with all requirements of federal, state and local laws, rules, regulations, and orders, including but not limited to obtaining the appropriate licenses and permits required by your local or state government.

You and your Principals agree to comply, and to assist us to the fullest extent possible in our efforts to comply, with Anti-Terrorism Laws (defined below). In connection with that compliance, you and your Principals certify, represent, and warrant that none of your property or interests is subject to being blocked under, and that you and your Principals otherwise are not in violation of, any of the Anti-Terrorism Laws. “Anti-Terrorism Laws” mean Executive Order 13224 issued by the President of the United States, the USA PATRIOT Act, and all other present and future federal, state, and local laws, ordinances, regulations, policies, lists, and other requirements of any governmental authority addressing or in any way relating to terrorist acts and acts of war. Any violation of the Anti-Terrorism Laws by you or your Principals, or any blocking of your or your Principals’ assets under the Anti-Terrorism Laws, shall constitute good cause for immediate termination of this Agreement.

6.7 Compliance with All Other Obligations

You shall comply with all other requirements and perform such other obligations as provided hereunder.

ARTICLE 7: FRANCHISE OPERATIONS

7.1 Compliance with Standards

You understand the importance of maintaining uniformity among all of the Cafés and the importance of complying with all of our standards and specifications relating to the operation of the Café.

7.2 Maintenance of Café

You shall maintain the Café in a high degree of sanitation, repair and condition, and in connection therewith shall make such additions, alterations, repairs and replacements thereto (but no others without our prior written consent) as may be required for that purpose, including, without limitation, such periodic repainting or replacement of obsolete signs, furnishings, equipment (including, but not limited to, point of sale or computer hardware and software systems), and décor as we may reasonably direct in order to maintain System-wide integrity and uniformity. You shall also obtain, at your cost and expense, any new or additional equipment (including point of sale or computer hardware and software systems), fixtures, supplies and other products and materials which may be reasonably required by us for you to offer and sell new menu items from the Café or to provide the Café services by alternative means, such as through catering or delivery arrangements. Except as may be expressly provided in the Manual, no material alterations or improvements or changes of any kind in design, equipment, signs, interior or exterior décor items, fixtures

or furnishings shall be made in or about the Café or its premises without our prior written approval, which shall not be unreasonably withheld.

In the event we notify you of any additions, alterations, repairs and replacements required to be made to your Café or the Accepted Location and you fail to make such additions, alterations, repairs and replacements within the timeframe we require, we shall have the right, without liability for trespass or tort, to enter the Accepted Location and make the additions, alterations, repairs and replacements, and you agree to promptly reimburse us for our expenses in so acting.

7.3 Remodeling and Redecorating

To assure the continued success of the Café, you shall, upon our request, upgrade, remodel and/or redecorate the Café premises, equipment (including point of sale or computer hardware and software systems), signs, interior and exterior décor items, fixtures, furnishings, supplies and other products and materials required for the operation of the Café to our then-current System-wide standards and specifications. We agree that we shall not request such upgrading, remodeling and/or redecorating more frequently than every ten (10) years during the term of this Agreement, except that if the Café franchise is transferred pursuant to Article 14, we may request that the transferee remodel and/or redecorate the Café premises as described herein.

7.4 Approved Suppliers

You shall comply with all of our standards and specifications relating to the purchase of all food and beverage items, ingredients, supplies, materials, fixtures, furnishings, equipment (including point of sale and computer hardware and software systems) and other products used or offered for sale at the Café. Except as provided in Sections 7.6 and 7.7 with respect to certain materials bearing the Marks and proprietary products, you shall obtain such items from suppliers (including manufacturers, distributors and other sources) who continue to demonstrate the ability to meet our then-current standards and specifications for food and beverage items, ingredients, supplies, materials, fixtures, furnishings, equipment and other items used or offered for sale at Cafés and who possess adequate quality controls and capacity to supply your needs promptly and reliably; and who have been approved in writing by us prior to any purchases by you from any such supplier; and who have not thereafter been disapproved by us.

If you desire to purchase, lease or use any unapproved products or other items, or you desire to purchase or lease from an unapproved supplier, you shall submit to us a written request for approval of such product or supplier, or shall request the supplier itself to do so. If requested, you shall pay our then-current evaluation fee for each product or supplier you request to have approved. You shall not purchase or lease any product or from any supplier until and unless such product or supplier has been approved in writing by us. We shall have the right to require that our representatives be permitted to inspect the proposed supplier's facilities, and that samples from the supplier be delivered, either to us or to an independent laboratory designated by us, for testing. We reserve the right, at our option, to re-inspect from time to time the facilities and products of any such approved supplier and to revoke our approval upon the supplier's failure to continue to meet any of our then-current criteria. Nothing herein shall be construed to require us to approve any particular supplier.

You understand and acknowledge that we may periodically receive payments from approved suppliers, such as in the form of rebates, based on such approved suppliers' sales of products and services to our franchisees. We reserve the right to direct that any supplier rebates, refunds, advertising allowances or other consideration payable or paid as a result of your purchases of non-proprietary goods, services or equipment be paid to us or any affiliate that we may designate. If we do so, then you hereby acknowledge that you will not assert any interest in such monies.

7.5 Operation of Café in Compliance with Our Standards

To ensure that the highest degree of quality and service is maintained, you shall operate the Café in strict conformity with such of our methods, standards and specifications set forth in the Manual and as may from time to time otherwise be prescribed in writing. In particular, you also agree:

7.5.1 To sell or offer for sale all menu items, products and services required by us and in the method, manner and style of distribution prescribed by us and only as expressly authorized by us in writing in the Manual or otherwise in writing.

7.5.2 To sell and offer for sale only the menu items, products and services that have been expressly approved for sale in writing by us; to refrain from deviating from our standards and specifications without our prior written consent; and to discontinue selling and offering for sale any menu items, products or services which we may, in our sole discretion, disapprove in writing at any time. Notwithstanding the foregoing, you understand and agree that we have the right, in our sole discretion, to grant to certain Long Island Bagel Cafés variances from our standard menu to accommodate regional or local tastes or ingredients, and that nothing in this Agreement requires us to grant to you a similar variance.

7.5.3 To maintain in sufficient supply and to use and sell at all times only such food and beverage items, ingredients, other products, materials, merchandise, supplies and paper goods that conform to our standards and specifications; to prepare all menu items in accordance with our recipes and procedures for preparation contained in the Manual or other written directives, including, but not limited to, the prescribed measurements of ingredients; and to refrain from deviating from our standards and specifications by the use or offer of non-conforming items or differing amounts of any items, without our prior written consent.

7.5.4 To permit us or our agents, during normal business hours, to remove a reasonable number of samples of food or non-food items from your inventory or from the Café, without payment therefor, in amounts reasonably necessary for testing by us or an independent laboratory to determine whether such samples meet our then-current standards and specifications. In addition to any other remedies we may have under this Agreement, we may require you to bear the cost of such testing if the supplier of the item has not previously been approved by us or if the sample fails to conform with our reasonable specifications.

7.5.5 To purchase or lease and install, at your expense, all fixtures, furnishings, equipment (including point of sale and computer hardware and software systems), décor items, signs, delivery vehicles, and related items as we may reasonably direct from time to time in the Manual or otherwise in writing; and to refrain from installing or permitting to be installed on or about the Café premises, without our prior written consent, any fixtures, furnishings, equipment, delivery vehicles, décor items, signs, games, vending machines or other items not previously approved as meeting our standards and specifications. If any of the property described above is leased by you from a third party, such lease shall be approved by us, in writing, prior to execution. Our approval shall be conditioned upon such lease containing a provision which permits any interest of yours in the lease to be assigned to us upon the termination or expiration of this Agreement and which prohibits the lessor from imposing an assignment or related fee upon us in connection with such assignment.

7.5.6 To grant us and our agents the right to enter upon the Café premises, during normal business hours, for the purpose of conducting inspections; to cooperate with our representatives in such inspections by rendering such assistance as they may reasonably request; and, upon notice from us or our agents and without limiting our other rights under this Agreement, to take such steps as may be necessary to correct immediately any deficiencies detected during any such inspection. Should you, for any reason,

fail to correct such deficiencies within fifteen (15) days, we shall have the right and authority (without, however, any obligation to do so) to correct such deficiencies and charge you a reasonable fee for our expenses in so acting, payable by you immediately upon demand, or in our discretion we may terminate this Agreement. In addition, we may require you to attend remedial training at our headquarters or we may send a trainer to your Café to provide remedial training, at your expense, which may include training or per diem fees and reimbursement of travel and living expenses.

7.5.7 To maintain a competent, conscientious, trained staff and to take such steps as are necessary to ensure that your employees preserve good customer relations and comply with such dress code as we may reasonably prescribe from time to time.

7.5.8 To install and maintain equipment and a telecommunications line in accordance with our specifications to permit us to access and retrieve by telecommunication any information stored on a point of sale system (or other computer hardware and software) you are required to utilize at the Café premises as specified in the Manual, thereby permitting us to inspect and monitor electronically information concerning your Café, Gross Sales and such other information as may be contained or stored in such equipment and software. You shall obtain and maintain high speed internet access and/or other means of electronic communication, as specified by us from time to time. It shall be a material default under this Agreement if you fail to maintain such equipment, lines and communication methods in operation and accessible to us at all times throughout the term of this Agreement. We shall have access as provided herein at such times and in such manner as we shall from time to time specify.

7.5.9 To honor all credit, charge, courtesy or cash cards or other credit devices required or approved by us. You must obtain our written approval prior to honoring any previously unapproved credit, charge, courtesy or cash cards or other credit devices.

7.5.10 To sell or otherwise issue gift cards or certificates (together “Gift Cards”) that have been prepared utilizing the standard form of Gift Card provided or designated by us, and only in the manner specified by us in the Manual or otherwise in writing. You shall fully honor all Gift Cards that are in the form provided or approved by us regardless of whether a Gift Card was issued by you or another Long Island Bagel Café. You shall sell, issue, and redeem (without any offset against any Royalty Fees) Gift Cards in accordance with procedures and policies specified by us in the Manual or otherwise in writing, including those relating to procedures by which you shall request reimbursement for Gift Cards issued by other Long Island Bagel Cafés and for making timely payment to us, other operators of Long Island Bagel Cafés, or a third-party service provider for Gift Cards issued from the Café that are honored by us or other Long Island Bagel Café operators. We reserve the right to alter the terms and conditions of any gift card or loyalty programs, including reserving the right to apply changes retroactively to benefits already accrued under such programs.

7.5.11 To issue and honor any loyalty cards that we designate or approve for the System.

7.6 Proprietary Products

You acknowledge and agree that we and our affiliates have developed, and may continue to develop, for use in the System certain products which are prepared from confidential proprietary recipes and which are trade secrets of us and our affiliates, and other proprietary products bearing the Marks. Because of the importance of quality and uniformity of production and the significance of such proprietary products in the System, it is to the mutual benefit of the parties that we closely control the production and distribution of such proprietary products. Accordingly, you agree that when such proprietary products become a part of the System, you shall use only our secret recipes and proprietary products and shall purchase all of your requirements for such proprietary products solely from us or from a source designated

by us. You further agree to purchase from us or our designated supplier for resale to your customers proprietary products and other merchandise identifying the System as we shall require, such as logoed merchandise, memorabilia and promotional products, in amounts sufficient to satisfy your customer demand.

7.7 Advertising and Promotional Materials

You shall require all advertising and promotional materials, signs, decorations, paper goods (including menus and all forms and stationery used in the Franchised Business), and other items which may be designated by us to bear the Marks in the form, color, location and manner prescribed by us, including, without limitation, notations about the ownership of the Marks.

7.8 Complaints

You shall process and handle all consumer complaints connected with or relating to the Café, and shall promptly notify us by telephone and in writing of all of the following complaints: (i) food related illnesses, (ii) environmental, safety or health violations, (iii) claims exceeding Five Hundred Dollars (\$500), and (iv) any other material claims against or losses suffered by you. You shall maintain for our inspection any governmental or trade association inspection reports affecting the Café or equipment located in the Café during the term of this Agreement and for thirty (30) days after the expiration or earlier termination of this Agreement.

7.9 Power of Attorney for Telephone Listings, etc.

Upon the execution of this Agreement or at any time thereafter, you shall, at our option, execute such forms and documents as we deem necessary, including the agreements attached hereto as Attachment 7, to appoint us as your true and lawful attorney-in-fact with full power and authority for the sole purpose of assigning to us only upon the termination or expiration of this Agreement, as required under Section 18.15: (i) all rights to the telephone numbers of the Café and any related and other business listings; and (ii) internet listings, domain names, internet accounts, advertising on the internet or world wide web, websites, listings with search engines, email addresses or any other similar listing or usages related to the Franchised Business. You agree that you have no authority to and shall not establish any website or listing on the internet or world wide web without our express written consent, which consent may be denied without reason.

7.10 Customer Surveys

You shall participate in all customer surveys and satisfaction audits, which may require that you provide discounted or complimentary products, provided that such discounted or complimentary sales shall not be included in the Gross Sales of the Café. Additionally, you shall participate in any complaint resolution and other programs as we may reasonably establish for the System, which programs may include, without limitation, providing discounts or refunds to customers.

7.11 Motor Vehicles

For your catering services, we anticipate that your employees will use their personal vehicles to provide such services from your Café. We reserve the right to require you to have temporary signage placed on each delivery vehicle. We expect that all delivery vehicles will be kept clean, in good working order and be properly registered and insured. You must have each person providing those services to comply with all laws, regulations and rules of the road, including “hands free” and no texting laws, and to use due care and caution operating and maintaining the motor vehicles. Except as described in this paragraph, we do not have any standards or exercise control over any motor vehicle that you use.

7.12 Unapproved Products and Services

In the event you sell any food, beverage, products, novelty items, clothing, souvenirs or perform any services that we have not prescribed, approved or authorized, you shall, immediately upon notice from us: (i) cease and desist offering or providing the unauthorized or unapproved food, beverage, product, premium, novelty item, clothing, souvenir or from performing such services and (ii) pay to us, on demand, a prohibited product or service fine equal to Two Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$250) per day for each day such unauthorized or unapproved food, beverage, product, premium, novelty item, clothing, souvenir or service is offered or provided by you after written notice from us. The prohibited product or service fine shall be in addition to all other remedies available to us under this Agreement or at law.

ARTICLE 8: ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION

Recognizing the value of advertising and the importance of the standardization of marketing programs to the furtherance of the goodwill and public image of the System, the parties agree as follows:

8.1 Participation in Advertising; Brand Development Programs

We may from time to time develop and create advertising and sales promotion programs designed to promote and enhance the collective success of all Cafés operating under the System. You shall participate in all such advertising and sales promotion programs in accordance with the terms and conditions established by us for each program. In all aspects of these programs, including, without limitation, the type, quantity, timing, placement and choice of media, market areas and advertising agencies, the standards and specifications established by us shall be final and binding upon you.

We may, from time to time, incorporate into the System programs, products or services which we either develop or otherwise obtain rights to, which are offered and sold under names, trademarks and/or service marks other than the Proprietary Marks and which your Café, along with other Long Island Bagel Cafés, will be required to offer and sell. This activity, referred to as “cobranding”, may involve changes to the Proprietary Marks and may require you to make modifications to your premises and the furniture, fixtures, equipment, signs and trade dress of your Café. If you receive written notice that we are instituting a cobranding program, you agree promptly to implement that program at your Café at the earliest commercially reasonable time and to execute any and all instruments required to do so. Under no circumstance will any cobranding program increase your Royalty Fees, Brand Development Fee or local advertising expenditure obligations under this Agreement.

8.2 Local Advertising

In addition to the ongoing marketing contributions set forth herein, you shall spend each month throughout the Initial Term an amount equal to two percent (2%) of Gross Sales on advertising and promotion of your Café in your Protected Territory (“Local Advertising”). All Local Advertising materials must first be approved by us, as described in Section 8.5 below. You shall submit to us, within thirty (30) days of our request, advertising expenditure reports accurately reflecting your Local Advertising expenditures, including verification copies of all marketing and any other information that we require.

While you may place advertisements in printed media and on television and radio that are targeted to customers and prospective customers located within your Protected Territory, you will not be deemed to be in violation of this Agreement if those advertisements, because of the natural circulation of the printed media or reach of television and radio, are viewed by prospective customers outside of your Protected Territory. You understand and acknowledge that you may not directly solicit customers outside of your Protected Territory.

8.3 Brand Development Fund

Recognizing the value of uniform marketing, advertising and promotion to the goodwill and public image of the System, you agree that we or our designee shall have the right to establish, maintain and administer a Brand Development Fund (hereinafter referred to as the “Fund”) for such national and regional advertising programs as we may deem necessary or appropriate, in our sole discretion, as follows:

8.3.1 We shall direct all national and regional brand development programs with sole discretion over the creative concepts, materials, endorsements and media used therein, and the placement and allocation thereof. You understand and acknowledge that the Fund is intended to maximize general public recognition and acceptance of the System and the Marks for the benefit of all Long Island Bagel Cafés operating under the System, and that we undertake no obligation in administering the Fund to ensure that expenditures from the Fund are proportionate or equivalent to your contributions made for your Café, or that any particular Café or franchisee benefits directly or pro rata from the placement of any such advertising. No portion of the Fund will be used to prepare and place advertising that is primarily a solicitation of franchise sales.

8.3.2 You agree that the Fund may be used to meet any and all costs of maintaining, administering, directing and preparing national and/or regional advertising materials, programs and public relations activities (including, without limitation, the cost of preparing and conducting television, radio, magazine, billboard, newspaper, direct mail and other media programs and activities, for conducting marketing surveys, test marketing, employing advertising agencies to assist therewith, and providing promotional brochures, coupons and other marketing materials to all franchisees of the System). The Fund shall be accounted for separately from our other funds, and shall not be used to defray any of our general operating expenses, except that we have the right to reimburse ourselves out of the Fund for the total costs (including indirect costs such as salaries for our employees who devote time and effort to Fund related activities and overhead expenses) of developing, producing and distributing any advertising materials and collecting the Brand Development Fee (including attorneys’, auditors’ and accountants’ fees and other expenses incurred in connection with collecting any Brand Development Fee). We also reserve the right to use a portion of the Fund to subsidize the cost of presenting refresher training and/or a franchisee meeting.

8.3.3 A statement of the operations of the Fund shall be prepared annually by our accountants and shall be made available to you on written request. The cost of the statement shall be paid by the Fund. We are not required to have any Fund statement audited, but if we choose to have the Fund audited it will be at the Fund’s expense. Except as expressly provided in this Section 8.3, we assume no direct or indirect liability or obligation to you with respect to the maintenance, direction or administration of the Fund.

8.3.4 Cafés owned by us and/or our affiliates will make contributions to the Fund on the same basis as our franchisees.

8.3.5 Any monies remaining in the Fund at the end of any year will carry over to the next year. Although the Fund is intended to be of perpetual duration, we may terminate the Fund. The Fund shall not be terminated, however, until all monies in the Fund have been expended for advertising or promotional purposes or returned to contributing Cafés or those operated by us, without interest, on the basis of their respective contributions.

8.3.6 If we elect to terminate the Fund, we may, in our sole discretion, reinstate the Fund at any time. If we so choose to reinstate the Fund, said reinstated Fund shall be operated as described herein.

8.4 Cooperative Advertising Funds

We may, in our discretion, create a regional advertising cooperative (“Cooperative”) in any area, or we may approve the creation of such a Cooperative by franchisees in the System, and establish the rules and regulations therefor. Immediately upon our request, you must become a member of the Cooperative for the area in which some or all of your Protected Territory is located. In no event may the Café be required to be a member of more than one Cooperative. The Cooperative must be governed in the manner we prescribe. The Cooperative may require each of its members to make contributions thereto in an amount as agreed upon by the Cooperative members. You shall contribute such amounts at the times and in the manner as determined by majority vote of the Cooperative members. Any funds contributed to a Cooperative will be credited against your Local Advertising obligation; provided, however, that if your contributions to a Cooperative are less than your Local Advertising requirement, you shall nevertheless spend the difference locally. The following provisions apply to each Cooperative:

8.4.1 the Cooperative must be organized and governed in a form and manner, and commence operation on a date, that we approve in advance in writing;

8.4.2 the Cooperative must be organized for the exclusive purpose of administering advertising programs and developing, subject to our approval, standardized promotional materials for the members’ use in local advertising within the Cooperative’s area;

8.4.3 the Cooperative may adopt its own rules and procedures, but such rules or procedures must be approved by us and must not restrict or expand your rights or obligations under this Agreement;

8.4.4 except as otherwise provided in this Agreement, and subject to our approval, any lawful action of the Cooperative (including, without limitation, imposing assessments for local marketing) at a meeting attended by members possessing more than fifty percent (50%) of the total voting power in the Cooperative is binding upon you if approved by members possessing more than fifty percent (50%) of the total voting power possessed by members in attendance, with each Café having one (1) vote, but no franchisee (or commonly controlled group of franchisees) may have more than twenty-five percent (25%) of the vote in the Cooperative regardless of the number of Cafés owned;

8.4.5 without our prior written approval, the Cooperative may not use, nor furnish to its members, any advertising or promotional plans or materials; all such plans and materials must be submitted to us in accordance with the procedure set forth in Section 8.5;

8.4.6 Cooperative may require its members to periodically contribute to it in such amounts as it determines;

8.4.7 no later than the fifteenth (15th) day of each month, each member/franchisee must submit its contribution under Section 8.4.6 for the preceding calendar month to the Cooperative, together with such other statements or reports as we or the Cooperative may require, with our prior written approval; and

8.4.8 if an impasse occurs because of a Cooperative members’ inability or failure, within forty-five (45) days, to resolve any issue affecting the Cooperative’s establishment or effective functioning, upon request of any Cooperative member, that issue must be submitted to us for consideration, and our resolution of such issue is final and binding on all Cooperative members.

8.5 Conduct of Advertising; Our Approval

All advertising and promotion by you in any medium shall be conducted in a professional manner and shall conform to our standards and requirements as set forth in the Manual or otherwise. You shall obtain our approval of all advertising and promotional plans and materials prior to use if such plans and materials have not been prepared by us or previously approved by us during the twelve (12) months prior to their proposed use. You shall submit such unapproved plans and materials to us not later than fifteen (15) days prior to the date you intend to use them. If we do not provide our specific approval of the proposed materials within this fifteen (15) day period, the proposed materials are deemed to be not approved. Any plans and materials that you submit to us for our review will become our property and there will be no restriction on our use or dissemination of such materials. You shall not advertise or use the Marks in any fashion on the internet, world wide web or via other means of advertising through telecommunication without our express written consent.

We reserve the right to require you to include certain language on all advertising to be used locally by you or to be used by a Cooperative, including, but not limited to, “Franchises Available” and reference to our telephone number and/or website.

8.6 Grand Opening Advertising

In addition to the ongoing advertising contributions and expenditures set forth herein, you shall be required to spend between Ten Thousand Dollars (\$10,000) and Fifteen Thousand Dollars (\$15,000) on a grand opening advertising campaign to promote the opening of the Café. The grand opening advertising campaign shall be conducted generally in the initial ninety (90) days following the Café’s opening, or such other period of time as we may designate. All advertising proposed to be used in the grand opening advertising campaign is subject to our review and approval in the manner set forth in Section 8.5. Your grand opening advertising campaign may include the giveaways and other promotions as we require.

8.7 Websites; Intranet; Social Media

We alone may establish, maintain, modify or discontinue all internet, world wide web and electronic commerce activities pertaining to the System. We have established one or more websites accessible through one or more uniform resource locators (“URLs”). We will provide your Café with a listing on our website and we may, but are not required to, design and provide for the benefit of your Café a “click through” subpage at our website for the promotion of your Café. If we establish one or more websites or other modes of electronic commerce and if we provide a “click through” subpage at the website(s) for the promotion of your Café, you must routinely provide us with updated copy, photographs and news stories about your Café suitable for posting on your “click through” subpage. We reserve the right to specify the content, frequency and procedure you must follow for updating your “click through” subpage.

Any websites or other modes of electronic commerce that we establish or maintain, including any software or mobile app we may develop, may – in addition to advertising and promoting the products, programs or services available at Long Island Bagel Cafés – also be devoted in part to offering Long Island Bagel Café franchises for sale and be used by us to exploit the electronic commerce rights which we alone reserve.

In addition to these activities, we may also establish an intranet through which downloads of operations and marketing materials, exchanges of franchisee email, System discussion forums and System-wide communications (among other activities) can be done. You may not maintain your own website; otherwise maintain a presence or advertise on the internet or any other mode of electronic commerce in connection with your Café; establish a link to any website we establish at or from any other website or page; or at any time establish any other website, electronic commerce presence or URL which in whole or

in part incorporates the “Long Island Bagel Café” name or any names confusingly similar to the Proprietary Marks.

You may promote your Café on social and networking websites, such as Facebook, Foursquare, Instagram, LinkedIn or Twitter. Your use of social and networking websites must comply with our System standards regarding the use of social media in your Café’s operation, which may include specifications regarding use of the Proprietary Marks and prohibitions on your and the Café’s employees posting or blogging comments about the Café or the System on any social or networking website you use. If you make any posting on a social or networking website that we do not approve of or that does not meet our standards, you must remove the posting within twenty-four (24) hours after notification from us. At our request, you must provide us with your login credentials and/or administrative access to any social media or networking accounts you create. We may provide access to branded social media pages/handles/assets, and you must update these regularly. We reserve the right to conduct collective/national campaigns via local social media on your behalf.

We alone will be, and at all times will remain, the sole owner of the copyrights to all material which appears on any website we establish and maintain, including any and all material you may furnish to us for your “click through” subpage.

8.8 Advisory Council

We may, in our discretion, form an advisory council to work with us to improve the System, the products offered by Long Island Bagel Cafés, advertising conducted by the Brand Development Fund, and any other matters that we deem appropriate. If an advisory council is formed, it will act solely in an advisory capacity, and will not have decision making authority. We will have the right to form, change, merge or dissolve any advisory council. We may develop by-laws for the governance of any advisory council.

If formed, an advisory council will be comprised of our representatives and franchisee representatives. Franchisee representatives may be selected by us or by a vote of other franchisees in the System. If you participate on an advisory council, you will pay any expenses you incur related to your participation, such as travel and living expenses to attend council meetings.

ARTICLE 9: MARKS

9.1 Use of Marks

We grant you the right to use the Marks during the term of this Agreement in accordance with the System and related standards and specifications.

9.2 Ownership of Marks; Limited License

You expressly understand and acknowledge that:

9.2.1 We are the owner or the licensee of the owner of all right, title and interest in and to the Marks and the goodwill associated with and symbolized by them. All references herein to our right, title and interest in the Marks shall be deemed to include the owner’s right, title and interest in the Marks.

9.2.2 Neither you nor any Principal shall take any action that would prejudice or interfere with the validity of our rights with respect to the Marks. Nothing in this Agreement shall give you any right, title, or interest in or to any of the Marks or any service marks, trademarks, trade names, trade dress, logos, copyrights or proprietary materials, except the right to use the Marks and the System in accordance

with the terms and conditions of this Agreement for the operation of the Café and only at or from its accepted location or in approved advertising related to the Café.

9.2.3 You understand and agree that the limited license to use the Marks granted hereby applies only to such Marks as are designated by us, and which are not subsequently designated by us as being withdrawn from use, together with those which may hereafter be designated by us in writing. You expressly understand and agree that you are bound not to represent in any manner that you have acquired any ownership or equitable rights in any of the Marks by virtue of the limited license granted hereunder, or by virtue of your use of any of the Marks.

9.2.4 You understand and agree that any and all goodwill arising from your use of the Marks and the System shall inure solely and exclusively to our benefit, and upon expiration or termination of this Agreement and the license herein granted, no monetary amount shall be assigned as attributable to any goodwill associated with your use of the Marks.

9.2.5 You shall not contest the validity of or our interest in the Marks or assist others to contest the validity of or our interest in the Marks.

9.2.6 You acknowledge that any unauthorized use of the Marks shall constitute an infringement of our rights in the Marks and a material event of default hereunder. You agree that you shall provide us with all assignments, affidavits, documents, information and assistance we reasonably request to fully vest in us all such rights, title and interest in and to the Marks, including all such items as are reasonably requested by us to register, maintain and enforce such rights in the Marks.

9.2.7 If it becomes advisable at any time, in our discretion, to modify or discontinue use of any Mark and/or to adopt or use one or more additional or substitute proprietary marks, then you shall be obligated to comply with any such instruction by us. We shall not have any obligation in such event to reimburse you for your documented expenses of compliance. You waive any other claim arising from or relating to any Mark change, modification or substitution. We will not be liable to you for any expenses, losses or damages sustained by you as a result of any Mark addition, modification, substitution or discontinuation. You covenant not to commence or join in any litigation or other proceeding against us for any of these expenses, losses or damages.

9.3 Limitation on Use of Marks

With respect to your licensed use of the Marks pursuant to this Agreement, you further agree that:

9.3.1 Unless otherwise authorized or required by us, you shall operate and advertise the Café only under the name “Long Island Bagel Café” without prefix or suffix. You shall not use the Marks as part of your corporate or other legal name and shall obtain our approval of a trade name or “d/b/a” prior to filing it with the applicable state authority.

9.3.2 During the term of this Agreement and any renewal hereof, you shall identify yourself as the independent owner of the Café in conjunction with any use of the Marks, including, but not limited to, uses on invoices, order forms, receipts and contracts, as well as the display of a notice in such content and form and at such conspicuous locations on the premises of the Café or any delivery vehicle as we may designate in writing.

9.3.3 You shall not use the Marks to incur any obligation or indebtedness on our behalf;

9.3.4 You shall comply with our instructions in filing and maintaining the requisite trade name or fictitious name registrations and shall execute any documents deemed necessary by us or our counsel to obtain protection of the Marks or to maintain their continued validity and enforceability.

9.4 Notification of Infringement or Claim

You shall notify us immediately by telephone and thereafter in writing of any apparent infringement of or challenge to your use of any Mark, of any claim by any person of any rights in any Mark, and you and the Principals shall not communicate with any person other than us, our counsel and your counsel in connection with any such infringement, challenge or claim. We shall have complete discretion to take such action as we deem appropriate in connection with the foregoing, and the right to control exclusively, any settlement, litigation or Patent and Trademark Office or other proceeding arising out of any such alleged infringement, challenge or claim or otherwise relating to any Mark. You agree to execute any and all instruments and documents, render such assistance, and do such acts or things as may, in our opinion, reasonably be necessary or advisable to protect and maintain our interests in any litigation or other proceeding or to otherwise protect and maintain the interests of us or any other interested party in the Marks. We will indemnify you and hold you harmless from and against any and all claims, liabilities, costs, damages and reasonable expenses for which you are held liable in any proceeding arising out of your use of any of the Marks (including settlement amounts), provided that the conduct of you and the Principals with respect to such proceeding and use of the Marks is in full compliance with the terms of this Agreement.

9.5 Retention of Rights by Us

The right and license of the Marks granted hereunder to you is non-exclusive and we thus have and retain the following rights, among others, subject only to the limitations of Article 1:

9.5.1 To grant other licenses for use of the Marks, in addition to those licenses already granted to existing franchisees;

9.5.2 To develop and establish other systems using the Marks or other names or marks and to grant licenses thereto without providing any rights to you; and

9.5.3 To engage, directly or indirectly, through our employees, representatives, licensees, assigns, agents and others, at wholesale, retail or otherwise, in (a) the production, distribution, license and sale of products and services, and (b) the use in connection with such production, distribution and sale, of the Marks and any and all trademarks, trade names, service marks, logos, insignia, slogans, emblems, symbols, designs and other identifying characteristics as may be developed or used from time to time by us.

ARTICLE 10: CONFIDENTIALITY AND NON-COMPETITION COVENANTS

10.1 Confidential Operations Manual

10.1.1 To protect our reputation and goodwill and to maintain high standards of operation under the Marks, you shall conduct your business in accordance with the Manual, other written directives which we may reasonably issue to you from time to time whether or not such directives are included in the Manual, and any other manuals and materials created or approved for use in the operation of the Franchised Business.

10.1.2 You and the Principals shall at all times treat the Manual, any of our written directives, and any other manuals and materials, and the information contained therein as confidential and shall maintain such information as trade secret and confidential in accordance with this Article 10. You and

the Principals shall divulge and make such materials available only to such of your employees as must have access to it in order to operate the Café. You and the Principals shall not at any time copy, duplicate, record or otherwise reproduce these materials, in whole or in part, or otherwise make the same available to any person other than those authorized above.

10.1.3 The Manual, written directives, other manuals and materials and any other confidential communications provided or approved by us shall at all times remain our sole property, shall at all times be kept in a secure place on the Café premises, and shall be returned to us immediately upon request or upon termination or expiration of this Agreement.

10.1.4 The Manual, any written directives, and any other manuals and materials issued by us and any modifications to such materials shall supplement and be deemed part of this Agreement.

10.1.5 We may from time to time revise the contents of the Manual and the contents of any other manuals and materials created or approved for use in the operation of the Franchised Business. You shall remove and return to us all pages of the Manual that have been replaced or updated by us. You expressly agree to comply with each new or changed standard.

10.1.6 You shall at all times ensure that the Manual are kept current and up to date. In the event of any dispute as to the contents of the Manual, the terms of the master copy of the Manual maintained by us at our headquarters shall control.

10.2 Confidential Information

10.2.1 Neither you nor any Principal shall, during the term of this Agreement or thereafter, communicate, divulge or use for the benefit of any other person, persons, partnership, association or corporation and, following the expiration or termination of this Agreement, they shall not use for their own benefit any confidential information, knowledge or know-how concerning the methods of operation of the Franchised Business which may be communicated to them or of which they may be apprised in connection with the operation of the Café under the terms of this Agreement. You and the Principals shall divulge such confidential information only to such of your employees as must have access to it in order to operate the Café. Any and all information, knowledge, know-how, techniques and any materials used in or related to the System which we provide to you in connection with this Agreement, including but not limited to the Manual, plans and specifications, marketing information and strategies and site evaluation, selection guidelines and techniques, recipes, and the terms of this Agreement, shall be deemed confidential for purposes of this Agreement. Neither you nor the Principals shall at any time, without our prior written consent, copy, duplicate, record or otherwise reproduce such materials or information, in whole or in part, nor otherwise make the same available to any unauthorized person. The covenants in this Section shall survive the expiration, termination or transfer of this Agreement or any interest herein and shall be perpetually binding upon you and each of the Principals.

10.2.2 You shall require and obtain the execution of covenants similar to those set forth in Section 10.2.1 from your General Manager and all other of your personnel who have received or will have access to confidential information. Such covenants shall be substantially in the form set forth in Attachment 5.

10.2.3 If you, the Principals, the General Manager, or any of your employees develop any new concept, process, product, recipe, or improvement in the operation or promotion of the Café, you are required to promptly notify us and provide us with all necessary related information, without compensation. You and the Principals acknowledge that any such concept, process product, recipe, or improvement will

become our property, and we may use or disclose such information to other franchisees as we determine to be appropriate.

10.3 Non-Competition

10.3.1 You and the Principals specifically acknowledge that, pursuant to this Agreement, you and the Principals will receive valuable training, trade secrets and confidential information, including, without limitation, information regarding the operational, sales, promotional and marketing methods and techniques of us and the System which are beyond the present skills and experience of you and the Principals and your managers and employees. You and the Principals acknowledge that such specialized training, trade secrets and confidential information provide a competitive advantage and will be valuable to them in the development and operation of the Café, and that gaining access to such specialized training, trade secrets and confidential information is, therefore, a primary reason why they are entering into this Agreement. In consideration for such specialized training, trade secrets and confidential information (including, without limitation, information regarding the operational, sales, promotional and marketing methods and techniques of us and the System which are beyond the present skills and experience of you and the Principals and your managers and employees), you and the Principals covenant that with respect to you, during the term of this Agreement except as otherwise approved in writing by us, which approval may be withheld or denied in our sole and absolute discretion, neither you nor any of the Principals shall, either directly or indirectly, for themselves or through, on behalf of or in conjunction with any person(s), partnership or corporation:

(a) Divert, or attempt to divert, any business or customer of the Franchised Business to any competitor, by direct or indirect inducement or otherwise, or do or perform, directly or indirectly, any other act injurious or prejudicial to the goodwill associated with the Marks and the System.

(b) Own, maintain, operate, engage in, or have any financial or beneficial interest in (including any interest in corporations, partnerships, trusts, unincorporated associations or joint ventures), advise, assist or make loans to, any business located within the United States, its territories, states or commonwealths, or any other country, province, state or geographic area in which we have used, sought registration of or registered the same or similar Marks or operates or licenses others to operate a business under the same or similar Marks, which business is of a character and concept similar to the Café, including a food service business which offers and sells the same or substantially similar food products (a “Competitive Business”) without our prior written consent.

10.3.2 With respect to you and each Principal, and for a continuous uninterrupted period commencing upon the expiration, termination of, or transfer of all of your or any Principals’ in this Agreement and continuing for two (2) years thereafter, except as otherwise approved in our sole and absolute discretion, neither you, nor any of the Principals shall, directly or indirectly, for themselves, or through, on behalf of or in conjunction with any person, persons, partnership, or corporation:

(a) Divert, or attempt to divert, any business or customer of the Franchised Business hereunder to any competitor, by direct or indirect inducement or otherwise, or do or perform, directly or indirectly, any other act injurious or prejudicial to the goodwill associated with the Marks and the System.

(b) Own, maintain, operate, engage in, or have any financial or beneficial interest in (including any interest in corporations, partnerships, trusts, unincorporated associations or joint ventures), advise, assist or make loans to any Competitive Business, which business is, or is intended to be, located within a five (5) mile radius of the location of any Café in the System.

10.3.3 The parties acknowledge and agree that each of the covenants contained herein are reasonable limitations as to time, geographical area, and scope of activity to be restrained and do not impose a greater restraint than is necessary to protect our goodwill or other business interests. The parties agree that each of the covenants herein shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Agreement. If all or any portion of a covenant in this Section is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in an unappealed final decision to which we are a party, you and the Principals expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant subsumed within the terms of such covenant that imposes the maximum duty permitted by law, as if the resulting covenant were separately stated in and made a part of this Section.

(a) You and the Principals understand and acknowledge that we shall have the right, in our sole and absolute discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant set forth in this Section 10.3, or any portion thereof, without their consent, effective immediately upon notice to you; and you and the Principals agree that they shall comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified, which shall be fully enforceable notwithstanding the provisions of Section 19.2 hereof.

(b) You and the Principals expressly agree that the existence of any claims they may have against us, whether or not arising from this Agreement, shall not constitute a defense to our enforcement of the covenants in this Section.

(c) Sections 10.3.1(b) and 10.3.2(b) shall not apply to ownership of less than a five percent (5%) beneficial interest in the outstanding equity securities of any publicly held company.

10.3.4 You shall require and obtain execution of covenants similar to those set forth in this Section 10.3 (including covenants applicable upon the termination of a person's employment with you) from your General Manager and all other of your personnel who have received or will have access to training from us. Such covenants shall be substantially in the form set forth in Attachment 5. Notwithstanding the foregoing, we reserve the right, in our sole discretion, to decrease the period of time or geographic scope of the non-competition covenant set forth in Attachment 5 or eliminate such non-competition covenant altogether for any party that is required to execute such agreement under this Section 10.3.4.

10.4 Failure to Comply

You and the Principals acknowledge that any failure to comply with the requirements of this Section shall constitute a material event of default under Article 17 hereof. You and the Principals acknowledge that a violation of the terms of this Section would result in irreparable injury to us for which no adequate remedy at law may be available, and you and the Principals accordingly consent to the issuance of an injunction prohibiting any conduct by you or the Principals in violation of the terms of this Section. You and the Principals agree to pay all court costs and reasonable attorneys' fees incurred by us in connection with the enforcement of this Section, including payment of all costs and expenses for obtaining specific performance of, or an injunction against violation of, the requirements of such Section.

ARTICLE 11: BOOKS AND RECORDS

11.1 Books and Records

You shall maintain during the term of this Agreement, and shall preserve for at least three (3) years from the dates of their preparation, full, complete and accurate books, records and accounts, including, but not limited to, sales slips, coupons, purchase orders, payroll records, check stubs, bank statements, sales tax records and returns, cash receipts and disbursements, journals and ledgers, records of EFT transactions, and backup or archived records of information maintained on any computer system in accordance with generally

accepted accounting principles and in the form and manner prescribed by us from time to time in the Manual or otherwise in writing.

11.2 Reports

In addition to the Royalty Report required by Article 4 hereof, you shall comply with the following reporting obligations:

11.2.1 You shall, at your expense, submit to us, in the form prescribed by us, a profit and loss statement for each month (which may be unaudited) for you within ten (10) days after the end of each month during the term hereof. Each such statement shall be signed by your treasurer or chief financial officer or comparable officer attesting that it is true, complete and correct;

11.2.2 You shall, at your expense, provide to us a complete annual financial statement (which shall be reviewed) prepared by an independent certified public accountant by April 15th of each year during the term hereof showing the results of the Café's operations during the previous calendar year. We reserve the right to require such financial statements to be audited by an independent certified public accountant satisfactory to us at your cost and expense if an inspection discloses an understatement of two percent (2%) or more in any report, pursuant to Section 11.3; and

11.2.3 You shall also submit to us, for review or auditing, such other forms, reports, records, information and data as we may reasonably designate, and which pertain to the Franchised Business, in the form and at the times and places reasonably required by us, upon request and as specified from time to time in writing.

11.3 Inspections; Audits

We or our designees shall have the right, during normal business hours, to review, audit, examine and copy any or all of your books and records as we may require at the Café. You shall make such books and records available to us or our designees immediately upon request. If any required Royalty Fee, Brand Development Fee, or other payments due to us are delinquent, or if an inspection should reveal that such payments have been understated in any report to us, then you shall immediately pay to us the amount overdue or understated upon demand with interest determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 4.5. If an inspection discloses an underpayment of amounts owed to us or an understatement in any report of Gross Sales of two percent (2%) or more, you shall, in addition, reimburse us for all costs and expenses connected with the inspection (including, without limitation, reasonable accounting and attorneys' fees). These remedies shall be in addition to any other remedies we may have at law or in equity.

11.4 Correction of Errors

You understand and agree that our receipt or acceptance of any of the statements furnished or royalties paid to us (or the cashing of any royalty checks or processing of any EFTs) shall not preclude us from questioning the correctness thereof at any time and, in the event that any inconsistencies or mistakes are discovered in such statements or payments, they shall immediately be rectified by you and the appropriate payment shall be made by you.

11.5 Authorization of Us

You hereby authorize (and agree to execute any other documents deemed necessary to effect such authorization) all banks, financial institutions, businesses, suppliers, manufacturers, contractors, vendors and other persons or entities with which you do business to disclose to us any requested financial information in their possession relating to you or the Café. You authorize us to disclose data from your

reports if we determine, in our sole and absolute discretion, that such disclosure is necessary or advisable, which disclosure may include disclosure to prospective or existing franchisees or other third parties.

11.6 We are Attorney-in-Fact

You hereby appoint us as your true and lawful attorney-in-fact with full power and authority, for the sole purpose of obtaining any and all returns and reports filed by you with any state and/or federal taxing authority pertaining to the Franchised Business. This power of attorney shall survive the expiration or termination of this Agreement.

ARTICLE 12: INSURANCE

12.1 You shall procure, before you begin construction of the Café, and shall maintain in full force and effect at all times during the term of this Agreement (and for such period thereafter as is necessary to provide the coverages required hereunder for events having occurred during the term of this Agreement) at your expense, an insurance policy or policies protecting you and us, our successors and assigns, our affiliates, and our respective officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors and employees of each of them against any demand or claim with respect to personal injury, death or property damage, or any loss, liability or expense whatsoever arising or occurring upon or in connection with the Café. Such insurance policies must be written by an insurance company acceptable to us and which has a rating of “A-” or higher with A.M. Best Company.

12.2 Such policy or policies shall be written by a responsible, duly licensed carrier or carriers reasonably acceptable to us and shall include, at a minimum (except as additional coverages and higher policy limits may reasonably be specified by us from time to time) the coverages specified in Section 12.4 below or in our Manual, in addition to any insurance that you must have according to the terms of the lease for the Accepted Location and as required by applicable law. All insurance must be on an “occurrence” basis.

12.3 Your coverage must include us as an additional named insured on a primary non-contributory basis to the general liability policy and the auto liability policy. The additional insureds shall be listed on the certificate as follows: “LIBC Franchise LLC and its members, officers, directors, partners, shareholders, regional directors, parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, agents and employees”; and it must be provided on an Additional Insured Grantor of Franchise Endorsement form CG2029 (or an endorsement form with comparable wording acceptable to us).

12.4 Currently you must maintain the following insurance:

12.4.1 Commercial general liability insurance (including premises liability, products liability, and personal injury protection) with limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000) per occurrence and Two Million Dollars (\$2,000,000) aggregate;

12.4.2 Automobile insurance, including non-owned and hired vehicles and uninsured/underinsured motorist coverages, with limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000) combined single limit;

12.4.3 Property insurance with full replacement cost for improvements, equipment, contents, and inventory, with a deductible of not more than Ten Thousand Dollars (\$10,000);

12.4.4 Loss of income insurance to cover twelve (12) months unlimited loss of income;

12.4.5 Workers' compensation and employer liability insurance as required by the laws of the state where your Café is located;

12.4.6 any insurance required by the terms of your lease; and

12.4.7 any insurance we may require in the future.

12.4.1 You and your insurers shall agree to waive rights of subrogation against us. At least ten (10) days before construction of your Café begins, and thereafter no fewer than thirty (30) days prior to the expiration of any such policy, you shall deliver to us Certificates of Insurance evidencing the existence and continuation of proper coverage with limits not less than those required hereunder, and you must deliver to us evidence of the waiver. Each year we may unilaterally modify the insurance minimum coverage requirements which may include an increase to the minimum coverage requirements to reflect changes in inflation or as market conditions warrant.

12.4.2 In addition to the insurance requirements above, related to any construction, renovation or remodeling of the Café, you must maintain builders' risks insurance and performance and completion bonds in forms and amounts, and written by a carrier or carriers, satisfactory to us. All of the policies must name us and those of our affiliates that we specify, and the respective officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them, as additional named insureds and must include a waiver of subrogation in favor of all those parties.

12.5 Your obligation to obtain and maintain the foregoing policy or policies in the amounts specified shall not be limited in any way by reason of any insurance which may be maintained by us, nor shall your performance of that obligation relieve you of liability under the indemnity provisions set forth in Article 15 of this Agreement.

12.6 All general liability and property damage policies shall contain a provision that we, our affiliates and the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them, although named as insureds, shall nevertheless be entitled to recover under such policies on any loss occasioned to us or our servants, agents or employees by reason of the negligence of you or your servants, agents or employees.

12.7 If requested by us, you shall deliver to us a copy of the insurance policy or policies required hereunder. All insurance policies required hereunder, with the exception of workers' compensation, shall name us, our affiliates and the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them, as additional named insureds, and shall expressly provide that any interest of same therein shall not be affected by any breach by you of any policy provisions. Further, all insurance policies required hereunder shall expressly provide that no less than thirty (30) days' prior written notice shall be given to us in the event of a material alteration to or cancellation of the policies.

12.8 Should you, for any reason, fail to procure or maintain the insurance required by this Agreement, as such requirements may be revised from time to time by us in writing, we shall have the right and authority (without, however, any obligation to do so) immediately to procure such insurance and to charge same to you, which charges shall be payable by you immediately upon notice together with a ten percent (10%) administrative fee. The foregoing remedies shall be in addition to any other remedies we may have at law or in equity.

12.9 Upon written request by us, you shall procure from your insurance carrier or carriers a report of claims made and reserves set against your insurance policies.

12.10 We reserve the right to modify the types of insurance coverages and amounts of coverage that you are required to maintain for the Café, and you agree to comply with any such changes, at your expense.

ARTICLE 13: DEBTS AND TAXES

13.1 Taxes

You shall promptly pay when due all Taxes (as defined below), levied or assessed, and all accounts and other indebtedness of every kind incurred by you in the conduct of the Franchised Business under this Agreement. Without limiting the provisions of Article 15, you shall be solely liable for the payment of all Taxes and shall indemnify us for the full amount of all such Taxes and for any liability (including penalties, interest and expenses) arising from or concerning the payment of Taxes, whether such Taxes were correctly or legally asserted or not. You shall submit a copy of all tax filings sent to federal, state and local tax authorities to us within ten (10) business days after such filing has been made with the appropriate taxing authority.

The term “Taxes” means any present or future taxes, levies, imposts, duties or other charges of whatever nature, including any interest or penalties thereon, imposed by any government or political subdivision of such government on or relating to the operation of the Franchised Business, the payment of monies, taxes imposed on the Royalty Fees paid to us, or the exercise of rights granted pursuant to this Agreement, whether imposed upon you or us.

13.2 Payments to Us

Each payment to be made to us hereunder shall be made free and clear and without deduction for any Taxes.

13.3 Tax Disputes

In the event of any bona fide dispute as to your liability for taxes assessed or other indebtedness, you may contest the validity or the amount of the tax or indebtedness in accordance with the procedures of the taxing authority or applicable law. However, in no event shall you permit a tax sale or seizure by levy of execution or similar writ or warrant or attachment by a creditor to occur against the premises of the Franchised Business or any improvements thereon.

13.4 Compliance with Laws

You shall comply with all federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations and shall timely obtain any and all permits, certificates or licenses necessary for the full and proper conduct of the Franchised Business, including, without limitation, licenses to do business, fictitious name registrations, sales tax permits, fire clearances, health permits, certificates of occupancy and any permits, certificates or licenses required by any environmental law, rule or regulation.

13.5 Notification of Action or Proceeding

You shall notify and deliver to us, in writing within five (5) days of the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding and of the issuance of any order, writ, injunction, award or decree of any court, agency or other governmental instrumentality, which may adversely affect the operation or financial condition of the Franchised Business.

ARTICLE 14: TRANSFER OF INTEREST

14.1 Transfer by Us

We shall have the right to assign this Agreement and all of our attendant rights and privileges to any person, firm, corporation or other entity provided that, with respect to any assignment resulting in the subsequent performance by the assignee of our functions: (i) the assignee shall, at the time of such assignment, be financially responsible and economically capable of performing our obligations; and (ii) the assignee shall expressly assume and agree to perform such obligations.

You expressly affirm and agree that we may sell our assets, our rights to the Marks or to the System outright to a third party; may go public; may engage in a private placement of some or all of our securities; may merge, acquire other corporations, or be acquired by another corporation; may undertake a refinancing, recapitalization, leveraged buyout or other economic or financial restructuring; and, with regard to any or all of the above sales, assignments and dispositions, you expressly and specifically waive any claims, demands or damages arising from or related to the loss of said Marks (or any variation thereof) and/or the loss of association with or identification of “LIBC Franchise LLC” as Franchisor. Nothing contained in this Agreement shall require us to remain in the same business or to offer the same products and services, whether or not bearing the Marks, in the event that we exercise our right to assign our rights in this Agreement.

14.2 Transfer by You

14.2.1 You understand and acknowledge that the rights and duties set forth in this Agreement are personal to you, and that we have granted rights under this Agreement in reliance on the business skill, financial capacity and personal character of you and the Principals. Accordingly, neither you nor any Principal, shall sell, assign (including but not limited to by operation of law, such as an assignment under bankruptcy or insolvency laws, in connection with a merger, divorce or otherwise), transfer, convey, give away, pledge, mortgage or otherwise encumber any direct or indirect interest in you, in this Agreement, in the Café and/or any of the Café’s material assets (other than in connection with replacing, upgrading or otherwise dealing with such assets as required or permitted by this Agreement without our prior written consent. Any purported assignment or transfer, by operation of law or otherwise, made in violation of this Agreement shall be null and void and shall constitute a material event of default under this Agreement.

14.2.2 If you wish to transfer all or part of your interest in the Café, any of the Café’s material assets (except as provided in Section 14.2.1 above) or this Agreement, or if you or a Principal wishes to transfer or permit a transfer of any ownership interest in you, then in each such case (any or all of which are referred to in this Article 14 as a “Restricted Transfer”), transferor and the proposed transferee shall apply to us for our consent. We shall not unreasonably withhold our consent to a Restricted Transfer. We may, in our sole discretion, require any or all of the following as conditions of our approval:

(a) All of the accrued monetary obligations of you or any of your affiliates and all other outstanding obligations to us arising under this Agreement or any other agreement shall have been satisfied in a timely manner and you shall have satisfied all trade accounts and other debts, of whatever nature or kind, in a timely manner;

(b) You and your affiliates shall not be in default of any provision of this Agreement, any amendment hereof or successor hereto, or any other agreement between you or any of your affiliates and us or any of our affiliates at the time of transaction;

(c) The transferor and its Principals shall have executed a general release, in a form reasonably satisfactory to us, of any and all claims against us, our officers, directors, shareholders,

partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them, in their corporate and individual capacities, including, without limitation, claims arising under this Agreement and federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations;

(d) The transferee shall demonstrate to our reasonable satisfaction that transferee meets the criteria considered by us when reviewing a prospective franchisee's application for a franchise, including, but not limited to, our educational, managerial and business standards; transferee's good moral character, business reputation and credit rating; transferee's aptitude and ability to conduct the business franchised herein (as may be evidenced by prior related business experience or otherwise); transferee's financial resources and capital for operation of the business; and the geographic proximity and number of other Cafés owned or operated by transferee;

(e) The transferee shall enter into a written agreement, in a form reasonably satisfactory to us, assuming full, unconditional, joint and several liability for, and agreeing to perform from the date of the transfer, all obligations, covenants and agreements contained in this Agreement; and, if transferee is a corporation or a partnership, transferee's shareholders, partners or other investors, as applicable, shall execute such agreement as transferee's principals and guarantee the performance of all such obligations, covenants and agreements;

(f) The transferee shall execute, for a term ending on the expiration date of this Agreement and with such renewal terms as may be provided by this Agreement, the standard form franchise agreement then being offered to new System franchisees and other ancillary agreements as we may require for the Café, which agreements shall supersede this Agreement and its ancillary documents in all respects and the terms of which agreements may differ from the terms of this Agreement, including, without limitation, the then-current Royalty Fee and Brand Development Fee; provided, however, that the transferee shall not be required to pay any initial franchise fee;

(g) The transferee, at its expense, shall renovate, modernize and otherwise upgrade the Café and, if applicable, any delivery vehicles to conform to the then-current standards and specifications of the System, and shall complete the upgrading and other requirements which conform to the System-wide standards within the time period reasonably specified by us;

(h) The transferor shall remain liable for all of the obligations to us in connection with the Café incurred prior to the effective date of the transfer and shall execute any and all instruments reasonably requested by us to evidence such liability;

(i) At the transferee's expense, the transferee, the transferee's General Manager and/or any other applicable Café personnel shall complete any training programs then in effect for franchisees of Cafés upon such terms and conditions as we may reasonably require;

(j) When you submit your request for our approval of the transfer, you shall pay to us a transfer fee equal to Fifteen Thousand Dollars (\$15,000) to reimburse us for reviewing the application to transfer, including, without limitation, training expenses, legal and accounting fees;

(k) If the transferee is a corporation, limited liability company or a partnership, the transferee shall make and will be bound by any or all of the representations, warranties and covenants set forth at Article 6 as we request. Transferee shall provide to us evidence satisfactory to us that the terms of such Section have been satisfied and are true and correct on the date of transfer.

14.2.3 You shall not grant a security interest in the Café or in any of your assets without our prior written consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld. In connection therewith, the secured

party will be required by us to agree that in the event of any default by you under any documents related to the security interest, we shall have the right and option to be substituted as obligor to the secured party and to cure any default of yours.

14.2.4 You acknowledge and agree that each condition which must be met by the transferee is reasonable and necessary to assure such transferee's full performance of the obligations hereunder.

14.3 Transfer to a Corporation or Limited Liability Company

In the event you desire to operate the Franchised Business through a corporation or limited liability company formed solely for the convenience of ownership, our consent may be conditioned upon any of the requirements set forth at Section 14.2.2, except that the requirements set forth at Sections 14.2.2(c), 14.2.2(d), 14.2.2(f), 14.2.2(g), 14.2.2(i), 14.2.2(j) and 14.2.2(k) shall not apply. With respect to a transfer to a corporation formed for the convenience of ownership, you shall be the owner of all of the voting stock or interest of the corporation and if you are more than one (1) individual, each individual shall have the same proportionate ownership interest in the entity as he had in you prior to the transfer.

Additionally, the following conditions shall apply: (i) ownership of the corporation or limited liability company shall remain with the original Principal(s) of this Agreement; (ii) the Principals shall remain personally liable for the performance of all obligations under this Agreement and are not released from any obligations to us; (iii) the newly formed corporation or limited liability company shall conduct no business other than the Franchised Business; and (iv) copies of your articles of incorporation, bylaws, operating agreement, other governing documents, any amendments thereto, and any certificates, buy-sell agreements or other documents restricting the sale or transfer of stock of the corporation, and any other documents as may be reasonably required by us shall be furnished to us prior to addition of your corporation or limited liability company as a "franchisee" under this Agreement. A transfer under this Section 14.3 may occur one (1) time only.

14.4 Our Right to Purchase Business

14.4.1 If you wish to transfer all or part of your interest in the Café or this Agreement or if you wish to transfer any ownership interest in you, pursuant to any bona fide offer received from a third party to purchase such interest, then such proposed seller shall promptly notify us in writing of each such offer and shall provide such information and documentation relating to the offer as we may require. We shall have the right and option, exercisable within thirty (30) days after receipt of such written notification and copies of all documentation required by us describing such offer, to send written notice to the seller that we intend to purchase the seller's interest on the same terms and conditions offered by the third party. In the event that we elect to purchase the seller's interest, closing on such purchase must occur within the latest of (i) sixty (60) days from the date of notice to the seller of the election to purchase by us, (ii) sixty (60) days from the date we receive or obtain all necessary documentation, permits and approvals, or (iii) such other date as the parties agree upon in writing. Any material change in the terms of any offer prior to closing shall constitute a new offer subject to the same right of first refusal by us as in the case of an initial offer. Our failure or refusal to exercise the option afforded by this Section 14.4 shall not constitute a waiver of any other provision of this Agreement, including all of the requirements of Article 14, with respect to a proposed transfer.

(a) In the case of a Restricted Transfer involving a bona fide purchase offer, then such proposed seller shall promptly notify us in writing of each such offer and shall provide such information and documentation relating to the offer as we may require. We shall have the right and option, exercisable within thirty (30) days after receipt of such written notification and copies of all documentation required by us describing such offer, to send written notice to the seller that we intend to purchase the

interest proposed to be transferred in the Restricted Transfer on the same terms and conditions offered by the proposed purchaser (the “Offer Terms”). In the event that we elect to purchase the seller’s interest, closing on such purchase must occur within the latest of (i) sixty (60) days from the date of notice to the seller of the election to purchase by us, (ii) sixty (60) days from the date we receive or obtain all necessary documentation, permits and approvals, or (iii) such other date as the parties agree upon in writing. Any material change in the terms of any offer prior to closing shall constitute a new offer subject to the same right of first refusal by us as in the case of an initial offer. Our failure or refusal to exercise the option afforded by this Section 14.4 shall not constitute a waiver of any other provision of this Agreement, including all of the requirements of Article 14 with respect to a proposed transfer.

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 14.4.1(a) above, where the Restricted Transfer (alone or together with any other Restricted Transfer or event effected within the prior twenty-four (24) month period) results in a “Change of Control”, we may elect, in our sole discretion, to treat the notice given pursuant to such Section 14.4.1(a) as an offer to assign to us all of your rights under this Agreement and to the Café (including lease and contract rights and other assets of you and your affiliates used in connection with the Café, excluding the assets of your benefit plans) (collectively, the “Café Interests”). As used in this Section 14.4.1(b), Change of Control means any circumstance resulting in one or more of your Principals ceasing to be a Principal and/or the addition of any new Principal. In such case, we shall notify you of the special election provided for in this Section 14.4.1(b) at the time we exercise our option as provided in Section 14.4.1(a). The terms of such purchase shall be the same as the Offer Terms (subject to the other provisions of this Section 14.4), but the price shall be the lesser of (1) the Implied Market Price or (2) the fair market value of the Café Interests, determined in a manner consistent with Section 18.12.1. As used herein, “Implied Market Price” shall mean an amount equal to the total price to be paid by the transferee under the Offer Terms, divided by the percentage (expressed as a decimal) of ownership of you proposed to be acquired (directly or indirectly) by the transferee, less the fair market value (determined as provided in Section 18.12.1) of any assets included in the Restricted Transfer that are not related to the Café. If you have more than one (1) Café, then the Implied Market Price shall, unless otherwise agreed by us and you, be allocated among all Cafés equally.

(c) We may assign our rights under this Section 14.4 to any other person or entity, subject to Section 14.1 above.

(d) It shall be a material obligation of yours under this Agreement to cause any transferor and transferee described in this Article 14 to perform all of the obligations imposed on such persons under this Article 14.

14.4.2 In the event an offer from a third party provides for payment of consideration other than cash or involves certain intangible benefits, we may elect to purchase the interest proposed to be sold for the reasonable cash equivalent. If the parties cannot agree within a reasonable time on the reasonable cash equivalent of the non-cash part of the Offer Terms, then such amount shall be determined by two (2) appraisers, with each party selecting one (1) appraiser, and the average of their determinations shall be binding. In the event of such appraisal, each party shall bear its own legal and other costs, and each shall pay one-half (1/2) of the appraisal fees. In the event that we exercise our right of first refusal herein provided, we shall have the right to set off against any payment therefor (i) all fees for any such independent appraiser due from you hereunder and (ii) all amounts due from you to us.

14.4.3 Failure to comply with the provisions of this Section prior to the transfer of any interest in you, the Café or this Agreement shall constitute a material event of default under this Agreement.

14.5 Death or Disability

14.5.1 Upon your death (if you are a natural person) or upon the death of any Principal who has an interest in this Agreement, the Café or you (the “Deceased”), the executor, administrator or other personal representative of the Deceased shall transfer such interest to a third party approved by us within twelve (12) months after the death. If no personal representative is designated or appointed or no probate proceedings are instituted with respect to the estate of the Deceased, then the distributee of such interest must be approved by us. If the distributee is not approved by us, then the distributee shall transfer such interest to a third party approved by us within twelve (12) months after the death of the Deceased.

14.5.2 Upon your permanent disability (if you are a natural person) or upon the permanent disability of any Principal who has an interest in this Agreement, the Café or you, we may, in our reasonable discretion, require such interest to be transferred to a third party in accordance with the conditions described in this Article 14 within six (6) months after notice to you. “Permanent disability” shall mean any physical, emotional or mental injury, illness or incapacity which would prevent a person from performing the obligations set forth in this Agreement or in the guaranty made part of this Agreement for at least ninety (90) consecutive days and from which condition recovery within ninety (90) days from the date of determination of disability is unlikely. Permanent disability shall be determined by a licensed practicing physician selected by us, upon examination of the person; or if the person refuses to submit to an examination, then such person automatically shall be deemed permanently disabled as of the date of such refusal for the purpose of this Section 14.5. The costs of any examination required by this Section shall be paid by us.

14.5.3 Upon the death or claim of permanent disability of you or any Principal, you or a representative of yours must notify us of such death or claim of permanent disability within ten (10) days of its occurrence. Any transfer upon death or permanent disability shall be subject to the same terms and conditions as described in this Section for any *inter vivos* transfer. If an interest is not transferred upon death or permanent disability as required in this Section, then such failure shall constitute a material event of default under this Agreement.

14.5.4 In order to prevent any interruption of the Café operations which would cause harm to the Café, thereby depreciating the value thereof, you authorize us, who may, at our option, in the event that you are absent for any reason or are incapacitated by reason of illness and are unable, in our sole and reasonable judgment, to operate the Café to our required standards, operate the Café for so long as we deem necessary and practical, and without waiver of any other rights or remedies we may have under this Agreement. All monies from the operation of the Café during such period of operation by us shall be kept in a separate account, and the expenses of the Café, including reasonable compensation and expenses for our representative, shall be charged to said account. If, as herein provided, we temporarily operate the Café franchised herein for you, you agree to indemnify and hold harmless us and any representative of ours who may act hereunder, from any and all acts which we may perform, as regards the interests of you or third parties.

14.6 No Waiver of Claims

Our consent to a transfer of any interest described herein shall not constitute a waiver of any claims which we may have against the transferring party, nor shall it be deemed a waiver of our right to demand material and full compliance with any of the terms of this Agreement by the transferee.

ARTICLE 15: INDEMNIFICATION

15.1 Indemnification by You

You and each of the Principals shall, at all times, indemnify and hold harmless to the fullest extent permitted by law us, our successors and assigns, their respective partners and affiliates and the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees of each of them (“Indemnitees”), from all “losses and expenses” (as defined in Section 15.4 below) incurred in connection with any action, suit, proceeding, claim, demand, investigation or inquiry (formal or informal), or any settlement thereof (whether or not a formal proceeding or action has been instituted) which arises out of or is based upon any of the following:

15.1.1 The infringement, alleged infringement, or any other violation or alleged violation by you or any of the Principals of any patent, trademark or copyright or other proprietary right owned or controlled by third parties (except as such may occur with respect to any right to use the Marks, any copyrights or other proprietary information granted hereunder pursuant to Article 10), including, but not limited to, the unauthorized use of any image, likeness or recording of a public figure;

15.1.2 The violation, breach or asserted violation or breach by you or any of the Principals of any federal, state or local law, regulation, ruling, standard or directive or any industry standard;

15.1.3 Libel, slander or any other form of defamation of us, the System or any franchisee operating under the System, by you or by any of the Principals;

15.1.4 The violation or breach by you or by any of the Principals of any warranty, representation, agreement or obligation in this Agreement or in any other agreement between you or any of your affiliates and us and our Indemnitees; and

15.1.5 Acts, errors, or omissions of you, any of your affiliates and any of the Principals and the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors and employees of you and your affiliates in connection with the establishment and operation of the Café, including, but not limited to, any acts, errors or omissions of any of the foregoing in the operation of any motor vehicle. The parties understand and agree that we cannot and do not exercise control over the manner of operation of any motor vehicles used by, or on behalf of, you or any employee, agent or independent contractor of yours and that the safe operation of any motor vehicle is, therefore, entirely your responsibility.

15.2 Notification of Action or Claim

You and each of the Principals agree to give us prompt notice of any such action, suit, proceeding, claim, demand, inquiry, or investigation. At the expense and risk of you and each of the Principals, we may elect to assume (but under no circumstance are we obligated to undertake) or appoint associate counsel of our own choosing with respect to, the defense and/or settlement of any such action, suit, proceeding, claim, demand, inquiry or investigation. Such an undertaking by us shall, in no manner or form, diminish the obligation of you and each of the Principals to indemnify the Indemnitees and to hold them harmless.

15.3 We May Settle

In order to protect persons or property, or our reputation or goodwill, or the reputation or goodwill of others, we may, at any time and without notice, as we in our reasonable judgment deem appropriate, consent or agree to settlements or take such other remedial or corrective action as we deem expedient with

respect to the action, suit, proceeding, claim, demand, inquiry or investigation if, in our reasonable judgment, there are reasonable grounds to believe that:

15.3.1 any of the acts or circumstances enumerated in Section 15.1.1 through 15.1.4 above have occurred; or

15.3.2 any act, error, or omission as described in Section 15.1.5 may result directly or indirectly in damage, injury, or harm to the System, any person or any property.

15.4 Losses and Expenses

All losses and expenses incurred under this Article 15 shall be chargeable to and paid by you or any of the Principals pursuant to your obligations of indemnity under this Section, regardless of any actions, activity or defense undertaken by us or the subsequent success or failure of such actions, activity, or defense.

As used in this Article 15, the phrase “losses and expenses” shall include, without limitation, all losses, compensatory, exemplary or punitive damages, fines, charges, costs, expenses, lost profits, reasonable attorneys’ fees, court costs, settlement amounts, judgments, compensation for damages to our reputation and goodwill, costs of or resulting from delays, financing, costs of advertising material and media time/space, and costs of changing, substituting or replacing the same, and any and all expenses of recall, refunds, compensation, public notices and other such amounts incurred in connection with the matters described.

15.5 Indemnitees Do Not Assume Liability

The Indemnitees do not hereby assume any liability whatsoever for acts, errors, or omissions of any third party with whom you, any of the Principals, your affiliates or any of the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors and employees of you or your affiliates may contract, regardless of the purpose. You and each of the Principals shall hold harmless and indemnify the Indemnitees for all losses and expenses which may arise out of any acts, errors or omissions of you, the Principals, your affiliates, the officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors and employees of you and your affiliates and any such other third parties without limitation and without regard to the cause or causes thereof or the negligence of us or any other party or parties arising in connection therewith and whether such negligence be sole, joint or concurrent, or active or passive.

15.6 Recovery from Third Parties

Under no circumstances shall the Indemnitees be required or obligated to seek recovery from third parties or otherwise mitigate their losses in order to maintain a claim against you or any of the Principals. You and each of the Principals agree that the failure to pursue such recovery or mitigate loss will in no way reduce the amounts recoverable from you or any of the Principals by the Indemnitees.

15.7 Survival of Terms

You and the Principals expressly agree that the terms of this Article 15 shall survive the termination, expiration or transfer of this Agreement or any interest herein.

ARTICLE 16: RELATIONSHIP OF THE PARTIES

16.1 No Fiduciary Relationship

The parties acknowledge and agree that you shall be an independent contractor and this Agreement does not create a fiduciary relationship between them, and that nothing in this Agreement is intended to constitute either party an agent, legal representative, subsidiary, joint venturer, partner, employee, joint employer or servant of the other for any purpose. You understand and agree that you are and will be an independent contractor under this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement may be interpreted as creating a partnership, joint venture, agency, employment or fiduciary relationship of any kind. Your employees are not our employees. Neither you nor any of your employees whose compensation you pay may in any way, directly or by implication, shall be considered our employee for any purpose, regardless of inclusion in mandated or other insurance coverage required in Article 12, tax or contributions, or requirements pertaining to withholdings, levied or fixed by any city, state or federal governmental agency. We will not have the power to hire or terminate the employment of your employees. You expressly agree, and will never claim otherwise, that our authority under this Agreement to determine that certain of your employees are qualified to perform certain tasks for your Franchised Business does not directly or indirectly vest in us the power to influence the employment terms of any such employee.

You agree that you alone are to exercise day-to-day control over all operations, activities and elements of your Franchised Business, and that under no circumstance shall we do so or be deemed to do so. You further acknowledge and agree, and will never claim otherwise, that the various restrictions, prohibitions, specifications and procedures of the System which you are required to comply with under this Agreement, whether set forth in our Manual or otherwise, do not directly or indirectly constitute, suggest, infer or imply that we control any aspect or element of the day-to-day operations of your Franchised Business, which you alone control, but only constitute standards you must adhere to when exercising your control of the day-to-day operations of your Franchised Business.

16.2 Independent Contractor

During the term of this Agreement, you shall hold yourself out to the public as an independent contractor conducting your Café operations pursuant to the rights granted by us. You agree to take such action as shall be reasonably necessary to that end, including, without limitation, exhibiting a notice of that fact in a conspicuous place on the Café premises established for the purposes hereunder or on any delivery vehicle and on all letterhead, business cards, forms, and as further described in the Manual. We reserve the right to specify in writing the content and form of such notice.

You acknowledge and agree that any training we provide for your employees is geared to impart to those employees, with your ultimate authority, the various procedures, protocols, systems and operations of a Long Island Bagel Café and in no fashion reflects any employment relationship between us and such employees. If it is ever asserted that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees in any private or government investigation, action, proceeding, arbitration or other setting, you irrevocably agree to assist us in defending said allegation, appearing at any venue requested by us to testify on our behalf; participating in depositions or other appearances; or preparing affidavits rejecting any assertion that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees.

16.3 Sole and Exclusive Employer of Your Employees

You hereby irrevocably affirm, attest and covenant your understanding that your employees are employed exclusively by you and in no fashion are any such employee employed, jointly employed or co-employed by us. You further affirm and attest that each of your employees is under your exclusive dominion and control and never under our direct or indirect control in any fashion whatsoever. You alone hire each

of your employees; set their schedules; establish their compensation rates; and pay all salaries, benefits and employment-related liabilities (such as workers' compensation insurance premiums/payroll taxes/Social Security contributions/unemployment insurance premiums). You alone have the ability to discipline or terminate your employees to the exclusion of us, and you acknowledge that we have no such authority or ability. You further attest and affirm that any minimum staffing requirements established by us are solely for the purpose of ensuring that the Franchised Business is at all times staffed at those levels necessary to operate the Franchised Business in conformity with the System and the products, services, standards of quality and efficiency, and other Long Island Bagel Café brand attributes known to and desired by the consuming public and associated with the Proprietary Marks. You affirm, warrant and understand that you may staff the Franchised Business with as many employees as you desire at any time so long as our minimal staffing levels are achieved. You also affirm and attest that any recommendations you may receive from us regarding salaries, hourly wages or other compensation for employees are recommendations only, designed to assist you to efficiently operate your Franchised Business, and that you are entirely free to disregard our recommendations regarding such employee compensation. Moreover, you affirm and attest that any training provided by us for your employees is geared to impart to those employees, with your ultimate authority, the various procedures, protocols, systems and operations of a Long Island Bagel Café and in no fashion reflects any employment relationship between us and such employees. Finally, should it ever be asserted that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees in any private or government investigation, action, proceeding, arbitration or other setting, you irrevocably agree to assist us in defending said allegation, including (if necessary) appearing at any venue requested by us to testify on our behalf (and, as may be necessary, submitting yourself to depositions, other appearances and/or preparing affidavits dismissive of any allegation that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees). To the extent we are the only named party in any such investigation, action, proceeding, arbitration or other setting to the exclusion of you, should any such appearance by you be required or requested by us, we will recompense you the reasonable costs associated with your appearing at any such venue.

16.4 You are Not Authorized

You understand and agree that nothing in this Agreement authorizes you or any of the Principals to make any contract, agreement, warranty or representation on our behalf, or to incur any debt or other obligation in our name or the Marks, and that we shall in no event assume liability for or be deemed liable under this Agreement as a result of, any such action, or for any act or omission of you or any of the Principals or any claim or judgment arising therefrom.

ARTICLE 17: TERMINATION

17.1 Automatic Termination – No Right to Cure

17.1.1 You acknowledge and agree that each of your obligations described in this Agreement is a material and essential obligation of yours; that non-performance of such obligations will adversely and substantially affect us and the System; and that our exercise of the rights and remedies set forth herein is appropriate and reasonable.

17.1.2 You shall be in default under this Agreement, and all rights granted to you herein shall automatically terminate without notice to you, if you, or any of your partners, if you are a partnership, or any of your officers, directors, shareholders, or members, if you are a corporation or limited liability company, shall become insolvent or make a general assignment for the benefit of creditors; if a petition in bankruptcy is filed by you or such a petition is filed against and not opposed by you; if you are adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent; if a bill in equity or other proceeding for the appointment of a receiver or other custodian for you or your business or assets is filed and consented to by you; if a receiver or other custodian (permanent or temporary) of your assets or property, or any part thereof, is appointed by any court of

competent jurisdiction; if proceedings for a composition with creditors under any state or federal law should be instituted by or against you; if a final judgment remains unsatisfied or of record for thirty (30) days or longer (unless a *supersedeas* bond is filed); if you are dissolved; if execution is levied against your business or property; if suit to foreclose any lien or mortgage against the premises or equipment is instituted against you and not dismissed within thirty (30) days; or if the real or personal property of the Franchised Business shall be sold after levy thereupon by any sheriff, marshal, or constable.

17.1.3 You shall be deemed to be in material default and we may, at our option, terminate this Agreement and all rights granted hereunder, without affording you any opportunity to cure the default (except as otherwise stated below), effective immediately upon notice to you, upon the occurrence of any of the following events:

(a) If you operate the Café or sell any products or services authorized by us for sale at the Café at a location which has not been approved by us;

(b) If you fail to acquire an Accepted Location for the Café within the time and in the manner specified in Article 2;

(c) If you fail to construct or remodel the Café in accordance with the plans and specifications provided to you under Section 5.3 as such plans may be adapted with our approval in accordance with Section 2.5;

(d) If you fail to open the Café for business within the period specified in Section 2.6 hereof;

(e) If you at any time cease to operate or otherwise abandon the Café (you will be deemed to have abandoned the Café if you do not operate it for three (3) consecutive days, unless the closure is due to circumstances beyond your control or we have consented to such closure), or lose the right to possession of the premises (including, without limitation, if the lease or any other agreement by which you have the right to possess the premises is terminated), or otherwise forfeit the right to do or transact business in the jurisdiction where the Café is located; provided, however, that this provision shall not apply in cases of Force Majeure (acts of God, strikes, lockouts or other industrial disturbances, war, riot, epidemic, acts of terrorism, fire or other catastrophe or other forces beyond your control; provided, however, that Force Majeure shall not include your lack of financing), if through no fault of yours the premises are damaged or destroyed by an event as described above, provided that you apply within thirty (30) days after such event for our approval to relocate or reconstruct the premises (which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld) and you diligently pursue such reconstruction or relocation;

(f) If you or any of the Principals are convicted of, or have entered a plea of *nolo contendere* to, a felony, a crime involving moral turpitude, or other crime that we believe is reasonably likely to have an adverse effect on the System, the Marks, the goodwill associated therewith, or our interests therein;

(g) If a threat or danger to public health or safety results from the construction, maintenance or operation of the Café;

(h) If you or any of the Principals purport to transfer any rights or obligations under this Agreement or any interest in you or the Café to any third party without our prior written consent or without offering us a right of first refusal with respect to such transfer, contrary to the terms of Article 14 of this Agreement;

(i) If you or any of your affiliates fail, refuse, or neglect promptly to pay any monies owing to us, or any of our affiliates or vendors, when due under this Agreement or any other agreement, or to submit the financial or other information required by us under this Agreement and do not cure such default within five (5) days following notice from us (or such other cure period specified in such other agreement, unless no cure period is stated or such period is less than five (5) days, in which case the five (5) day cure period shall apply);

(j) If you or any of the Principals fail to comply with the in-term covenants in Section 10.3 hereof or you fail to obtain execution of the covenants and related agreements required under Section 10.3.4 hereof within thirty (30) days following notice from us;

(k) If, contrary to the terms of Section 10.2.1 hereof, you or any of the Principals disclose or divulge any confidential information provided to you or the Principals by us, or fail to obtain execution of covenants and related agreements required under Section 10.2.2 hereof within thirty (30) days following notice from us;

(l) If a transfer upon death or permanent disability is not transferred in accordance with Article 14 and within the time periods therein;

(m) If you knowingly maintain false books or records, or submit any false reports to us;

(n) If you breach in any material respect any of the covenants in any material respect set forth in Article 6 or have falsely made any of the representations or warranties set forth in Article 6;

(o) If you fail to propose a qualified replacement or successor General Manager within the time required under Section 6.3.4 following ten (10) days prior written notice;

(p) If you fail to procure and maintain the insurance policies required by Article 12 and you fail to cure such default within ten (10) days following notice from us;

(q) If you misuse or make any unauthorized use of the Marks or otherwise materially impair the goodwill associated therewith or our rights therein; provided that, notwithstanding the above, you shall be entitled to notice of such event of default and shall have twenty-four (24) hours to cure such default;

(r) If you or any of the Principals commit three (3) material events of default under this Agreement within any twelve (12) month period, whether or not such defaults are of the same or different nature and whether or not such defaults have been cured by you after notice by us;

(s) If any of your managers is not able to complete our initial training program to our satisfaction, after having given you the opportunity to designate a replacement manager;

(t) If you fail to comply with all applicable laws and ordinances relating to the Café, including Anti-Terrorism Laws, or if your or any of your Principals' assets, property, or interests are blocked under any law, ordinance, or regulation relating to terrorist activities, or you or any of your Principals otherwise violate any such law, ordinance, or regulation;

(u) If you fail a quality assurance audit or inspection and do not cure any deficiencies detected during such audit or inspection within fifteen (15) days; or

(v) Any license or permit you are required to maintain for the operation of the Café is revoked.

17.2 Notice of Termination – 30 Days to Cure

Except as provided in Sections 17.1.2 and 17.1.3 of this Agreement, upon any default by you which is susceptible of being cured, we may terminate this Agreement by giving written notice of termination stating the nature of such default to you at least thirty (30) days prior to the effective date of termination. However, you may avoid termination by immediately initiating a remedy to cure such default and curing it to our reasonable or making a bona fide attempt to cure to our reasonable satisfaction within the thirty (30) day period and by promptly providing proof thereof to us. If any such default is not cured within the specified time, or such longer period as applicable law may require, this Agreement shall terminate without further notice to you effective immediately upon the expiration of the thirty (30) day period or such longer period as applicable law may require. Defaults which are susceptible of cure hereunder may include, but are not limited to, the following illustrative events:

17.2.1 If you fail to comply with any of the requirements imposed by this Agreement, as it may from time to time be amended or reasonably be supplemented by us or fail to carry out the terms of this Agreement in good faith.

17.2.2 If you fail to maintain or observe any of the standards, specifications or procedures prescribed by us in this Agreement or otherwise in writing.

17.2.3 If you fail, refuse, or neglect to obtain our prior written approval or consent as required by this Agreement.

17.2.4 If any license or permit you are required to maintain for the operation of the Café is suspended.

17.3 Cross-Defaults, Non-Exclusive Remedies, etc.

Any default by you (or any person/company affiliated with you) under this Agreement may be regarded as a default under any other agreement between us (or any of our affiliates) and you (or any of your affiliates). Any default by you (or any person/company affiliated with you) under any other agreement, including, but not limited to, any lease and/or sublease, between us (or any of our affiliates) and you (or any person/company affiliated with you), and any default by you (or any person/company affiliated with you) under any obligation to us (or any of our affiliates) may be regarded as a default under this Agreement. Any default by you (or any person/company affiliated with you) under any lease, sublease, loan agreement, security interest or otherwise, whether with us, any of our affiliates and/or any third party may be regarded as a default under this Agreement and/or any other agreement between us (or any of our affiliates) and you (or any of your affiliates).

In each of the foregoing cases, we (and any of our affiliates) will have all remedies allowed at law, including termination of your rights (and/or those of any person/company affiliated with you) and our (and/or our affiliates') obligations. No right or remedy which we may have (including termination) is exclusive of any other right or remedy provided under law or equity and we may pursue any rights and/or remedies available.

17.4 Our Right to Discontinue Services to You

If you are in breach of any obligation under this Agreement, and we deliver to you a notice of termination pursuant to this Article 17, we have the right to suspend our performance of any of our obligations under this Agreement including, without limitation, the sale or supply of any services or products for which we are an approved supplier to you and/or suspension of your Café's listing or "click though" subpage on our website, until such time as you correct the breach.

17.5 Amendment Pursuant to Applicable Law

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Article, if any valid, applicable law or regulation of a competent governmental authority having jurisdiction over this franchise and the parties hereto shall limit our rights of termination under this Agreement or shall require longer notice periods than those set forth above, this Agreement is deemed amended to satisfy the minimum notice periods or restrictions upon such termination required by such laws and regulations; provided, however, that such constructive amendment shall not be deemed a concession by us that the grounds for termination set forth in this Agreement do not constitute "good cause" for termination within the meaning ascribed to that term by any applicable law or regulation. We shall not be precluded from contesting the validity, enforceability or application of such laws or regulations in any action, hearing or proceeding relating to this Agreement or the termination of this Agreement.

ARTICLE 18: POST-TERMINATION

Upon termination or expiration of this Agreement, all rights granted hereunder to you shall forthwith terminate, and:

18.1 Cease Operations

You shall immediately cease to operate the Café under this Agreement, and shall not thereafter, directly or indirectly, represent to the public or hold yourself out as a present or former franchisee of ours.

18.2 Stop Using the System

You shall immediately and permanently cease to use, in any manner whatsoever, any confidential methods, computer software, procedures, and techniques associated with the System; the mark "Long Island Bagel Café"; and all other Marks and distinctive forms, slogans, signs, symbols, and devices associated with the System. In particular, you shall cease to use, without limitation, all signs, advertising materials, displays, stationery, forms and any other articles which display the Marks, and shall immediately change all paint colors, remove all of our proprietary or non-proprietary design items.

18.3 Cancellation of Assumed Names

You shall take such action as may be necessary to cancel any assumed name or equivalent registration which contains the marks "Long Island Bagel Café", "LIBC", or any other service mark or trademark of ours, and you shall furnish us with evidence satisfactory to us of compliance with this obligation within five (5) days after termination or expiration of this Agreement.

18.4 No Use of Similar Marks

You agree, in the event you continue to operate or subsequently begin to operate any other business, not to use any reproduction, counterfeit, copy or colorable imitation of the Marks, either in connection with such other business or the promotion thereof, which is likely to cause confusion, mistake or deception, or which is likely to dilute our rights in and to the Marks, and further agree not to utilize any designation of

origin or description or representation which falsely suggests or represents an association or connection with us constituting unfair competition.

18.5 Payment of Sums Owed

You and your Principals shall promptly pay all sums owing to us. Such sums shall include all damages, costs and expenses, including reasonable attorneys' fees, incurred by us as a result of any default by you, which obligation shall give rise to and remain, until paid in full, a lien in our favor against any and all of the personal property, furnishings, equipment, fixtures, and inventory owned by you and on the premises operated hereunder at the time of default.

18.6 Payment of Damages, Costs and Expenses

You and the Principals shall pay to us all damages, costs and expenses, including reasonable attorneys' fees, incurred by us in connection with obtaining any remedy available to us for any violation of this Agreement and, subsequent to the termination or expiration of this Agreement, in obtaining injunctive or other relief for the enforcement of any provisions of this Article 18.

18.7 Delivery of Manual and Materials

You shall immediately deliver to us the Manual, software licensed by us (if any), records, files, instructions, correspondence, all materials related to operating the Café, including, without limitation, agreements, invoices, and any and all other materials relating to the operation of the Café in your possession or control, and all copies thereof (all of which are acknowledged to be our property), and shall retain no copy or record of any of the foregoing, except your copy of this Agreement and of any correspondence between the parties and any other documents which you reasonably need for compliance with any provision of law.

18.8 Confidential Information

You and the Principals shall comply with the restrictions on confidential information contained in Article 10 of this Agreement and shall also comply with the non-competition covenants contained in Article 10. Any other person required to execute similar covenants pursuant to Article 10 shall also comply with such covenants.

18.9 Advertising and Promotional Materials

You shall also immediately furnish us with an itemized list of all advertising and sales promotion materials bearing the Marks or any of our distinctive markings, designs, labels, or other marks thereon, whether located on your premises or under your control at any other location. We shall have the right to inspect these materials. We shall have the option, exercisable within thirty (30) days after such inspection, to purchase any or all of the materials at your cost, or to require you to destroy and properly dispose of such materials. Materials not purchased by us shall not be utilized by you or any other party for any purpose unless authorized in writing by us.

18.10 Signage

Upon execution of this Agreement, in partial consideration of the rights granted hereunder, you acknowledge and agree that all right, title and interest in the signs used at the Café are hereby assigned to us, and that upon termination or expiration of this Agreement, neither you nor any lien holder of yours shall have any further interest therein.

18.11 Assignment of Lease

If you operate the Café under a lease for the Café premises with a third party or, with respect to any lease for equipment used in the operation of the Franchised Business, then you shall, at our option, assign to us any interest which we have in any lease or sublease for the premises of the Café or any equipment related thereto. We may exercise such option at or within thirty (30) days after either termination or (subject to any existing right to renew) expiration of this Agreement. In the event we do not elect to exercise our option to acquire the lease or sublease for the Café premises or do not have such option, you shall make such modifications or alterations to the Café premises as are necessary to distinguish the appearance of the Café from that of other Cafés operating under the System and shall make such specific additional changes as we may reasonably request. If you fail or refuse to comply with the requirements of this Section 18.11, we shall have the right to enter upon the premises of the Franchised Business, without being guilty of trespass or any other crime or tort, to make or cause to be made such changes as may be required, at your expense, which expense you agree to pay upon demand. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 18.11 to the contrary, in the event the lease is assigned to us, we hereby indemnify and hold harmless you and any guarantors under said lease, for any breach by us or our successors or assigns from any liability arising out of the lease for the Café premises from and after the date of the assignment of lease.

18.12 Our Right to Purchase

18.12.1 Except as provided in Sections 18.9, 18.10 and 18.13, we shall have the option, to be exercised within thirty (30) days after termination or expiration of this Agreement, to purchase from you any or all of the furnishings, equipment (including any point of sale or computer hardware and software systems), signs, fixtures, supplies, and inventory of yours related to the operation of the Café, at fair market value. If we exercise our right to purchase all or a portion of your assets, we shall be purchasing such assets only and shall be assuming no liabilities whatsoever, unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the parties. If the parties cannot agree on the fair market value within thirty (30) days of our exercise of this option, fair market value shall be determined by two (2) appraisers, with each party selecting one (1) appraiser, and the average of their determinations shall be binding. In the event of such appraisal, each party shall bear its own legal and other costs, and each shall pay one-half (1/2) of the appraisal fees. If we elect to exercise any option to purchase herein provided, we shall have the right to set off (i) all fees for any such independent appraiser due from you, (ii) all amounts due from you to us and (iii) any costs incurred in connection with any escrow arrangement (including reasonable legal fees), against any payment therefor and shall pay the remaining amount in cash.

18.12.2 In addition to the options described above and if you own the Café premises, then we shall have the option, to be exercised at or within thirty (30) days after termination or expiration of this Agreement, to purchase the Café premises including any building thereon, if applicable, for the fair market value of the land and building, and any or all of the furnishings, equipment, signs, fixtures, supplies and inventory therein at fair market value. We shall purchase assets only and shall assume no liabilities whatsoever, unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the parties. If you do not own the land on which the Café is operated, and we exercise our option for an assignment of the lease, we may exercise this option for the purpose of purchasing the building if owned by you and related assets as described above. If the parties cannot agree on fair market value within thirty (30) days of our exercise of this option, fair market value shall be determined in accordance with appraisal procedure described above.

18.12.3 With respect to the options described in Sections 18.11, 18.12.1 and 18.12.2, you shall deliver to us in a form satisfactory to us, such warranties, deeds, releases of lien, bills of sale, assignments and such other documents and instruments which we deem necessary in order to perfect our title and possession in and to the properties being purchased or assigned and to meet the requirements of all tax and government authorities. If, at the time of closing, you have not obtained all of these certificates

and other documents, we may, in our sole discretion, place the purchase price in escrow pending issuance of any required certificates or documents.

18.12.4 The time for closing of the purchase and sale of the properties described in Sections 18.12.1 and 18.12.2 shall be a date not later than thirty (30) days after the purchase price is determined by the parties or the determination of the appraisers, or such date we receive and obtain all necessary permits and approvals, whichever is later, unless the parties mutually agree to designate another date. The time for closing on the assignment of the lease described in Section 18.11 shall be a date no later than ten (10) days after our exercise of the option thereunder unless we are exercising our options under either Section 18.12.1 or 18.12.2, in which case the date of the closing shall be on the same closing date prescribed for such option. Closing shall take place at our corporate offices or at such other location as the parties may agree.

18.13 Café Assets

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in Sections 18.11 and 18.12, if you operate the Café from a premises that is subleased to you by us, upon termination (or expiration without renewal) of this Agreement, we shall have the right to take immediate possession of the assets of the Café, including, any or all of the furnishings, equipment (including any point of sale or computer hardware and software systems), signs, fixtures, supplies, and inventory of yours related to the operation of the Café. We shall have a lien against all such assets in the amount of any amounts due to us under this Agreement or any other agreement. We shall have the right to have such assets appraised at the lower of cost or fair market value of the used assets, and to acquire all right, title and interest to such assets, without conducting any public sale, by paying to you (or to any lender of yours who has a lienholder interest in the assets) the difference between the appraised value and the amounts owed to us by you at the time of termination. If the lien on the assets from your lender has priority over any lien of ours, and the amount of the lien is in excess of the appraised value of such assets, we shall have the right to deal directly with your lienholder, and to pay any amounts due to you directly to the lienholder. You agree to provide all further assurances, and to execute all documents required by us or by law to lawfully effect such transfer, and to perfect our security interest. We shall have the right to take such action without the execution of any further documents by you if you fail or refuse to comply with these further assurances.

18.14 Assignment of Options by Us

We shall be entitled to assign any and all of our options in this Section to any other party, without your consent.

18.15 Telephone Numbers, Internet Listings, etc.

You, at our option, shall assign to us all rights to the telephone numbers of the Café and any related Internet pages trademark listing or other business listings and execute all forms and documents required by us and any telephone company at any time to transfer such service and numbers to us. Further, you shall assign to us all internet listings, domain names, internet accounts, advertising on the internet or world wide web, websites, listings with search engines, email addresses or any other similar listing or usage related to the Franchised Business. The forms we may require you to execute include, but are not limited to, those included in Attachment 7 hereto. Notwithstanding any forms and documents which may have been executed under Section 7.9, you hereby appoint us as your true and lawful agent and attorney-in-fact with full power and authority, for the sole purpose of taking such action as is necessary to complete such assignment. This power of attorney shall survive the expiration or termination of this Agreement. You shall thereafter use different telephone numbers, email addresses or other listings or usages at or in connection with any subsequent business conducted by you.

18.16 Liquidated Damages

18.16.1 If we terminate this Agreement with cause, you agree to pay to us, within fifteen (15) days after the date of termination, liquidated damages equal to the average value of the Royalty Fees you paid or owed (per month) to us during the twelve (12) months before the termination multiplied by (i) twenty-four (24), being the number of months in two (2) full years, or (ii) the number of months remaining during the term of this Agreement, whichever is lower.

18.16.2 The parties hereto acknowledge and agree that it would be impracticable to determine precisely the damages we would incur from this Agreement's termination and the loss of cash flow from Royalty Fees due to, among other things, the complications of determining what costs, if any, we might have saved and how much the Royalty Fees would have grown over what would have been this Agreement's remaining term. The parties hereto consider this liquidated damages provision to be a reasonable, good faith pre-estimate of those damages.

18.16.3 The liquidated damages provision only covers our damages from the loss of cash flow from the Royalty Fees. It does not cover any other damages, including damages to our reputation with the public and landlords and damages arising from a violation of any provision of this Agreement other than the Royalty Fee section. You and each of your Principals agree that the liquidated damages provision does not give us an adequate remedy at law for any default under, or for the enforcement of, any provision of this Agreement other than the Royalty Fee section.

ARTICLE 19: MISCELLANEOUS

19.1 Notices

Any and all notices required or permitted under this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be personally delivered or sent by expedited delivery service or certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, first class postage prepaid, or sent by facsimile or email (provided that the sender confirms the facsimile by sending an original confirmation copy by certified or registered mail or expedited delivery service within three (3) business days after transmission) to the respective parties set forth in the introductory paragraph of this Agreement, unless and until a different address has been designated by written notice to the other party:

Any notice shall be deemed to have been given at the time of personal delivery or, in the case of facsimile, upon transmission (provided confirmation is sent as described above) or, in the case of expedited delivery service or registered or certified mail, three (3) business days after the date and time of mailing.

19.2 Entire Agreement

This Agreement, the documents referred to herein, and the Attachments hereto, constitute the entire, full and complete agreement between us and you and the Principals concerning the subject matter hereof and shall supersede all prior related agreements between us and you and the Principals; provided, however, that nothing in this or any related agreement is intended to disclaim the representations made by us in the Disclosure Document that was furnished to you by us. Except for those permitted to be made unilaterally by us hereunder, no amendment, change or variance from this Agreement shall be binding on either party unless mutually agreed to by the parties and executed by their authorized officers or agents in writing.

19.3 No Waiver

No delay, waiver, omission or forbearance on our part to exercise any right, option, duty or power arising out of any breach or default by you or the Principals under this Agreement shall constitute a waiver by us to enforce any such right, option, duty or power against you or the Principals, or as to a subsequent

breach or default by you or the Principals. Acceptance by us of any payments due to us hereunder subsequent to the time at which such payments are due shall not be deemed to be a waiver by us of any preceding breach by you or the Principals of any terms, provisions, covenants or conditions of this Agreement.

19.4 Our Prior Approval

Whenever this Agreement requires our prior approval or consent, you shall make a timely written request to us, and such approval or consent shall be obtained in writing.

19.5 No Warranty or Guaranty

We make no warranties or guarantees upon which you may rely and assume no liability or obligation to you or any third party to which we would not otherwise be subject, by providing any waiver, approval, advice, consent or suggestion to you in connection with this Agreement, or by reason of any neglect, delay or denial of any request therefor.

19.6 Continued Obligation to Pay Sums

If a Force Majeure event shall occur, then, in addition to payments required under Section 17.1.3(e), you shall continue to be obligated to pay to us any and all amounts that you shall have duly become obligated to pay in accordance with the terms of this Agreement prior to the occurrence of any Force Majeure event and the Indemnitees shall continue to be indemnified and held harmless by you in accordance with Article 15. Except as provided in Section 17.1.3(e) and the immediately preceding sentence herein, none of the parties hereto shall be held liable for a failure to comply with any terms and conditions of this Agreement when such failure is caused by an event of Force Majeure. Upon the occurrence of any event of the type referred to herein, the party affected thereby shall give prompt notice thereof to the other parties, together with a description of the event, the duration for which the party expects its ability to comply with the provisions of the Agreement to be affected thereby and a plan for resuming operation under the Agreement, which the party shall promptly undertake and maintain with due diligence. Such affected party shall be liable for failure to give timely notice only to the extent of damage actually caused.

19.7 Arbitration

Except to the extent we elect to enforce the provisions of this Agreement by judicial process and injunction in our sole discretion, all disputes, claims and controversies between the parties arising under or in connection with this Agreement or the making, performance or interpretation thereof (including claims of fraud in the inducement and other claims of fraud and the arbitrability of any matter) which have not been settled through negotiation will be settled by binding arbitration within Nassau County, New York, under the authority of the statutes of New York (the "Statutes"). The arbitrator(s) will have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in franchising or distribution law and will have the right to award specific performance of this Agreement. If the parties cannot agree upon a mutually agreeable arbitrator, then the arbitration shall be conducted as per the selection method set forth in the Statutes. To the extent such rules are not inconsistent with the provisions of this arbitration provision or the Statutes, the proceedings will be conducted under the commercial arbitration rules of the American Arbitration Association. The decision of the arbitrator(s) will be final and binding on all parties. This Section will survive termination or non-renewal of this Agreement under any circumstances. Judgment upon the award of the arbitrator(s) may be entered in any court having jurisdiction thereof. During the pendency of any arbitration proceeding, you and we shall fully perform our respective obligations under this Agreement.

19.8 Venue; Governing Law

With respect to any claims, controversies or disputes which are not finally resolved through negotiation or arbitration, or as otherwise provided above, you and the Principals hereby irrevocably submit themselves to the jurisdiction of the state courts and the Federal District Court nearest to Nassau County, New York. You and the Principals hereby waive all questions of personal jurisdiction for the purpose of carrying out this provision. You and the Principals hereby agree that service of process may be made upon any of them in any proceeding relating to or arising out of this Agreement or the relationship created by this Agreement by any means allowed by New York or federal law. You and the Principals further agree that venue for any proceeding relating to or arising out of this Agreement shall be Nassau County, New York; provided, however, with respect to any action (1) for monies owed, (2) for injunctive or other extraordinary relief or (3) involving possession or disposition of, or other relief relating to, real property, we may bring such action in any State or Federal District Court which has jurisdiction.

Except as provided elsewhere in this Agreement (for example, with regard to the applicability of the Federal Arbitration Act, 9 U.S.C. §1 et seq. and the effect of federal preemption of state law by such Act) and except to the extent governed by the United States Trademark Act and other federal laws, the parties agree that this Agreement (including any claims, counter-claims or otherwise by you) and all other matters concerning the parties will be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

19.9 Agreement Regarding Governing Law and Choice of Forum

You, the Principals and we acknowledge that the parties' agreement regarding applicable state law and forum set forth in Sections 19.7 and 19.8 above provide each of the parties with the mutual benefit of uniform interpretation of this Agreement and any dispute arising out of this Agreement or the parties' relationship created by this Agreement. Each of you, the Principals and we further acknowledge the receipt and sufficiency of mutual consideration for such benefit and that each party's agreement regarding applicable state law and choice of forum have been negotiated in good faith and are part of the benefit of the bargain reflected by this Agreement.

19.10 Waiver of Punitive Damages; Waiver of Jury Trial

You, the Principals and we hereby waive, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any right to or claim or any punitive, exemplary, incidental, indirect, special, consequential or other damages (including, without limitation, loss of profits) against either party, their officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees, in their corporate and individual capacities, arising out of any cause whatsoever (whether such cause be based in contract, negligence, strict liability, other tort or otherwise) and agree that in the event of a dispute, either party shall be limited to the recovery of any actual damages sustained by it. If any other term of this Agreement is found or determined to be unconscionable or unenforceable for any reason, the foregoing provisions of waiver by agreement of punitive, exemplary, incidental, indirect, special, consequential or other damages (including, without limitation, loss of profits) shall continue in full force and effect.

We and you irrevocably waive trial by jury in any action, proceeding, or counterclaim, whether at law or in equity, brought by either of us against the other. Any and all claims and actions arising out of or relating to this Agreement, the relationship of you and us, or your operation of the Café, brought by either party hereto against the other, whether in arbitration, or a legal action, shall be commenced within two (2) years from the occurrence of the facts giving rise to such claim or action, or such claim or action shall be barred.

19.11 Execution in Multiple Counterparts

This Agreement may be executed in multiple counterparts, each of which when so executed shall be an original, and all of which shall constitute one and the same instrument.

19.12 Captions

The captions used in connection with the sections and subsections of this Agreement are inserted only for purpose of reference. Such captions shall not be deemed to govern, limit, modify or in any other manner affect the scope, meaning or intent of the provisions of this Agreement or any part thereof nor shall such captions otherwise be given any legal effect.

19.13 Survival of Terms

Any obligation of you or the Principals that contemplates performance of such obligation after termination or expiration of this Agreement or the transfer of any interest of you or the Principals therein, shall be deemed to survive such termination, expiration or transfer.

19.14 Severability of Provisions

Except as expressly provided to the contrary herein, each portion, section, part, term and provision of this Agreement shall be considered severable; and if, for any reason, any portion, section, part, term or provision is determined to be invalid and contrary to, or in conflict with, any existing or future law or regulation by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction, this shall not impair the operation of, or have any other effect upon, the other portions, sections, parts, terms or provisions of this Agreement that may remain otherwise intelligible, and the latter shall continue to be given full force and effect and bind the parties; the invalid portions, sections, parts, terms or provisions shall be deemed not to be part of this Agreement; and there shall be automatically added such portion, section, part, term or provision as similar as possible to that which was severed which shall be valid and not contrary to or in conflict with any law or regulation.

19.15 Joint and Several Obligations

All references herein to the masculine, neuter or singular shall be construed to include the masculine, feminine, neuter or plural, where applicable. Without limiting the obligations individually undertaken by the Principals under this Agreement, all acknowledgments, promises, covenants, agreements and obligations made or undertaken by you in this Agreement shall be deemed, jointly and severally, undertaken by all of the Principals.

19.16 Rights and Remedies Cumulative

All rights and remedies of the parties to this Agreement shall be cumulative and not alternative, in addition to and not exclusive of any other rights or remedies which are provided for herein or which may be available at law or in equity in case of any breach, failure or default or threatened breach, failure or default of any term, provision or condition of this Agreement or any other agreement between you or any of your affiliates and us. The rights and remedies of the parties to this Agreement shall be continuing and shall not be exhausted by any one or more uses thereof and may be exercised at any time or from time to time as often as may be expedient; and any option or election to enforce any such right or remedy may be exercised or taken at any time and from time to time. The expiration, earlier termination or exercise of our rights pursuant to Article 17 of this Agreement shall not discharge or release you or any of the Principals from any liability or obligation then accrued, or any liability or obligation continuing beyond, or arising out of, the expiration, the earlier termination or the exercise of such rights under this Agreement.

19.17 References

Each reference in this Agreement to a corporation or partnership shall be deemed to also refer to a limited liability company and any other entity or organization similar thereto. Each reference to the organizational documents, equity owners, directors, and officers of a corporation in this Agreement shall be deemed to refer to the functional equivalents of such organizational documents, equity owners, directors, and officers, as applicable, in the case of a limited liability company or any other entity or organization similar thereto.

19.18 No Rights or Remedies Except to the Parties

Except as expressly provided to the contrary herein, nothing in this Agreement is intended, nor shall be deemed, to confer upon any person or legal entity other than you, us, our officers, directors, members and employees and such of your and our respective successors and assigns as may be contemplated (and, as to you, authorized by Article 14), any rights or remedies under or as a result of this Agreement.

19.19 Effectiveness of Agreement

This Agreement shall not become effective until signed by an authorized officer of ours.

19.20 Modification of the System

You understand and agree that the System must not remain static if it is to meet, without limitation, presently unforeseen changes in technology, competitive circumstances, demographics, populations, consumer trends, societal trends and other marketplace variables, and if it is to best serve the interests of us, you and all other franchisees. Accordingly, you expressly understand and agree that we may from time to time change the components of the System including, but not limited to, altering the products, programs, services, methods, standards, forms, policies and procedures of that System; abandoning the System altogether in favor of another system in connection with a merger, acquisition, other business combination or for other reasons; adding to, deleting from or modifying those products, programs and services which your Franchised Business is authorized and required to offer; modifying or substituting entirely the building, premises, equipment, signage, trade dress, décor, color schemes and uniform specifications and all other unit construction, design, appearance and operation attributes which you are required to observe hereunder; and changing, improving, modifying, or substituting other words or designs for, the Marks. You expressly agree to comply with any such modifications, changes, additions, deletions, substitutions and alterations; provided, however, that such changes shall not materially and unreasonably increase your obligations hereunder.

You shall accept, use and effectuate any such changes or modifications to, or substitution of, the System as if they were part of the System at the time that this Agreement was executed.

We shall not be liable to you for any expenses, losses or damages sustained by you as a result of any of the modifications contemplated hereby. You hereby covenant not to commence or join in any litigation or other proceeding against us or any third party complaining of any such modifications or seeking expenses, losses or damages caused thereby. You expressly waive any claims, demands or damages arising from or related to the foregoing activities including, without limitation, any claim of breach of contract, breach of fiduciary duty, fraud, and/or breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing.

19.21 Operation in the Event of Absence or Disability

In order to prevent any interruption of the Franchised Business operations which would cause harm to the Franchised Business, thereby depreciating the value thereof, you authorize us, who may, at our option,

in the event that you are absent for any reason or are incapacitated by reason of illness and are unable, in our sole and reasonable judgment, to operate the Franchised Business, operate the Franchised Business for so long as we deem necessary and practical, and without waiver of any other rights or remedies we may have under this Agreement. All monies from the operation of the Franchised Business during such period of operation by us shall be kept in a separate account, and the expenses of the Franchised Business, including reasonable compensation and expenses for our representative, shall be charged to said account. If, as herein provided, we temporarily operate the Franchised Business franchised herein for you, you agree to indemnify and hold harmless us and any representative of ours who may act hereunder, from any and all acts which we may perform, as regards the interests of you or third parties.

19.22 Step-In Rights

If we determine in our sole judgment that the operation of your business is in jeopardy, or if a default occurs, then in order to prevent an interruption of the Franchised Business which would cause harm to the System and thereby lessen its value, you authorize us to operate your business for as long as we deem necessary and practical, and without waiver of any other rights or remedies which we may have under this Agreement. In our sole judgment, we may deem you incapable of operating the Franchised Business if, without limitation, you are absent or incapacitated by reason of illness or death; you have failed to pay when due or have failed to remove any and all liens or encumbrances of every kind placed upon or against your business; or we determine that operational problems require that we operate your business for a period of time that we determine, in our sole discretion, to be necessary to maintain the operation of the business as a going concern.

We shall keep in a separate account all monies generated by the operation of your business, less the expenses of the business, including reasonable compensation and expenses for our representatives. If we temporarily operate the Café franchised herein on your behalf, you also agree to pay us the then-current fee for the management and maintenance of the Café in your absence. In the event of our exercise of the Step-In Rights, you agree to hold harmless us and our representatives for all actions occurring during the course of such temporary operation. You agree to pay all of our reasonable attorneys' fees and costs incurred as a consequence of our exercise of the Step-In Rights. Nothing contained herein shall prevent us from exercising any other right which we may have under this Agreement, including, without limitation, termination.

19.23 Costs and Legal Fees

If we are required to enforce this Agreement in a judicial or arbitration proceeding, you shall reimburse us for our costs and expenses, including, without limitation, reasonable accountants', attorneys', attorney assistants', and expert witness fees, costs of investigation and proof of facts, court costs, other litigation expenses and travel and living expenses, whether incurred prior to, in preparation for or in contemplation of the filing of any such proceeding. If we are required to engage legal counsel in connection with any failure by you to comply with this Agreement, you shall reimburse us for any of the above-listed costs and expenses incurred by us.

ARTICLE 20: SECURITY INTERESTS

20.1 Collateral

You grant to us a security interest ("Security Interest") in all of the furniture, fixtures, equipment, signage, and realty (including your interests under all real property and personal property leases) of the Café, together with all similar property now owned or hereafter acquired, additions, substitutions, replacements, proceeds, and products thereof, wherever located, used in connection with the Café. All items in which a security interest is granted are referred to as the "Collateral".

20.2 Indebtedness Secured

The Security Interest is to secure payment of the following (the “Indebtedness”):

20.2.1 All amounts due under this Agreement or otherwise by you;

20.2.2 All sums which we may, at our option, expend or advance for the maintenance, preservation, and protection of the Collateral, including, without limitation, payment of rent, taxes, levies, assessments, insurance premiums, and discharge of liens, together with interest, or any other property given as security for payment of the Indebtedness;

20.2.3 All expenses, including reasonable attorneys’ fees, which we incur in connection with collecting any or all Indebtedness secured hereby or in enforcing or protecting our rights under the Security Interest and this Agreement; and

20.2.4 All other present or future, direct or indirect, absolute or contingent, liabilities, obligations, and indebtedness of you to us or third parties under this Agreement, however created, and specifically including all or part of any renewal or extension of this Agreement.

Our security interest, as described herein, shall be subordinated to any financing related to your operation of the Café, including, but not limited to, a real property mortgage and equipment leases.

20.3 Additional Documents

You will from time to time as required by us join with us in executing any additional documents and one or more financing statements pursuant to the Uniform Commercial Code (and any assignments, extensions, or modifications thereof) in form satisfactory to us.

20.4 Possession of Collateral

Upon default and termination of your rights under this Agreement, we shall have the immediate right to possession and use of the Collateral.

20.5 Our Remedies in Event of Default

You agree that, upon the occurrence of any default set forth above, the full amount remaining unpaid on the Indebtedness secured shall, at our option and without notice, become due and payable immediately, and we shall then have the rights, options, duties, and remedies of a secured party under, and you shall have the rights and duties of a debtor under, the Uniform Commercial Code of New York (or other applicable law), including, without limitation, our right to take possession of the Collateral and without legal process to enter any premises where the Collateral may be found. Any sale of the Collateral may be conducted by us in a commercially reasonable manner. Reasonable notification of the time and place of any sale shall be satisfied by mailing to you pursuant to the notice provisions set forth above.

20.6 Special Filing as Financing Statement

This Agreement shall be deemed a Security Agreement and a Financing Statement. This Agreement may be filed for record in the real estate records of each county in which the Collateral, or any part thereof, is situated and may also be filed as a Financing Statement in the counties or in the office of the Secretary of State, as appropriate, in respect of those items of Collateral of a kind or character defined in or subject to the applicable provisions of the Uniform Commercial Code as in effect in the appropriate jurisdiction.

ARTICLE 21: TECHNOLOGY

21.1 Computer Systems and Software

The following terms and conditions shall apply with respect to your computer system:

21.1.1 We shall have the right to specify or require that certain brands, types, makes, and/or models of communications, computer systems, and hardware to be used by, between, or among Long Island Bagel Cafés, including without limitation: (a) back office and point of sale systems, data, audio, video, and voice storage, retrieval, and transmission systems for use at Long Island Bagel Cafés, between or among Cafés, and between and among the Franchised Café and us and/or you; (b) Point of Sale Systems; (c) physical, electronic, and other security systems; (d) printers and other peripheral devices; (e) archival back-up systems; and (f) internet access mode and speed (collectively, the “Computer System”).

21.1.2 We shall have the right, but not the obligation, to develop or have developed for us, or to designate: (a) computer software programs and accounting system software that you must use in connection with the Computer System (“Required Software”), which you shall install; (b) updates, supplements, modifications, or enhancements to the Required Software, which you shall install; (c) the tangible media upon which you shall record data; and (d) the database file structure of your Computer System.

21.1.3 You shall record all sales on computer-based point of sale systems approved by us or on such other types of systems as may be designated by us in the Manual or otherwise in writing (“Point of Sale Systems”), which shall be deemed part of your Computer System.

21.1.4 You shall make, from time to time, such upgrades and other changes to the Computer System and Required Software as we may request in writing (collectively, “Computer Upgrades”).

21.1.5 You shall comply with all specifications issued by us with respect to the Computer System and the Required Software, and with respect to Computer Upgrades. You shall also afford us unimpeded access to your Computer System and Required Software as we may request, in the manner, form, and at the times requested by us.

21.2 Data

We may, from time to time, specify in the Manual or otherwise in writing the information that you shall collect and maintain on the Computer System installed at the Café, and you shall provide to us such reports as we may reasonably request from the data so collected and maintained. All data pertaining to the Café, and all data created or collected by you in connection with the System, or in connection with your operation of the Café (including without limitation data pertaining to or otherwise concerning the Café’s customers) or otherwise provided by you (including, without limitation, data uploaded to, or downloaded from your Computer System) is and will be owned exclusively by us, and we will have the right to use such data in any manner that we deem appropriate without compensation to you. Copies and/or originals of such data must be provided to us upon our request. We hereby license use of such data back to you for the term of this Agreement, at no additional cost, solely for your use in connection with the business franchised under this Agreement.

21.3 Privacy

You shall abide by all applicable laws pertaining to privacy of information collected or maintained regarding customers or other individuals (“Privacy”) and shall comply with our standards and policies

pertaining to Privacy, including any standards of Privacy promulgated by the Payment Card Industry (also known as PCI compliance requirements). If there is a conflict between our standards and policies pertaining to Privacy and applicable law, you shall: (a) comply with the requirements of applicable law; (b) immediately give us written notice of said conflict; and (c) promptly and fully cooperate with us and our counsel as we may request to assist us in our determination regarding the most effective way, if any, to meet our standards and policies pertaining to Privacy within the bounds of applicable law.

21.4 Telecommunications

You shall comply with our requirements (as set forth in the Manual or otherwise in writing) with respect to establishing and maintaining telecommunications connections between your Computer System and our Intranet (as defined below), if any, and/or such other computer systems as we may reasonably require.

21.5 Intranet

We may establish a website providing private and secure communications between us, you, franchisees, licensees and other persons and entities as determined by us, in our sole discretion (an “Intranet”). You shall comply with our requirements (as set forth in the Manual or otherwise in writing) with respect to connecting to the Intranet and utilizing the Intranet in connection with the operation of the Café. The Intranet may include, without limitation, the Manual, training other assistance materials, and management reporting solutions (both upstream and downstream, as we may direct). You shall purchase and maintain such computer software and hardware as may be required to connect to and utilize the Intranet.

21.6 On-line Use of Proprietary Marks

You shall not use the Proprietary Marks, or any abbreviation or other name associated with us and/or the System as part of any email address, domain name, and/or other identification of you in any electronic medium. You agree not to transmit or cause any other party to transmit advertisements or solicitations by email or other electronic media without our prior written consent as to your plan for transmitting such advertisements.

21.7 No Outsourcing Without Prior Written Consent

You shall not hire third party or outside vendors to perform any services or obligations in connection with the Computer System, Required Software, or any other of your obligations without our prior written approval therefor, unless we have designated an approved supplier to provide such services. Our consideration of any proposed outsourcing vendor(s) may be conditioned upon, among other things, such third party or outside vendor’s entry into a confidentiality agreement with us and you in a form that is reasonably provided by us.

21.8 Changes to Technology

You and we acknowledge and agree that changes to technology are dynamic and not predictable within the term of this Agreement. In order to provide for inevitable but unpredictable changes to technological needs and opportunities, you agree that we shall have the right to establish, in writing, reasonable new standards for the implementation of technology in the System; and you agree that you shall abide by those reasonable new standards established by us as if this Article 21 were periodically revised by us for that purpose. You acknowledge and understand that this Agreement does not place any limitations on either our right to require you to obtain Computer Upgrades or the cost of such Computer Upgrades.

ARTICLE 22: YOUR REPRESENTATIONS AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

22.1 Your Representations

You represent and warrant to us, with the intention that we are relying thereon in entering into this Agreement, that:

22.1.1 If you are a corporation, limited liability company, general partnership, partnership, or limited partnership, then you are organized under the laws of the state of your principal place of business (or another state which you have identified to us) and are in good standing with and qualified to do business in each state and political/governmental subdivision having jurisdiction over the Café.

22.1.2 If you are a corporation, limited liability company, general partnership, partnership, or limited partnership, you have all corporate power and authority to execute, deliver, consummate and perform this Agreement, and it will be binding upon you and your successors and assigns when executed.

22.1.3 You do not have any material liabilities, adverse claims, commitments or obligations of any nature as of the date of execution of this Agreement, whether accrued, unliquidated, absolute, contingent or otherwise which are not reflected as liabilities on the balance sheets of your current financial statements, which you have furnished to us before the execution of this Agreement.

22.1.4 As of the date of execution of this Agreement, there are no actions, suits, proceedings or investigations pending or, to your knowledge or the knowledge any of your officers, directors, principal shareholders, proprietors, partners or principals (as applicable) after due inquiry, threatened, in any court or arbitral forum, or before any governmental agency or instrumentality, nor to the best of your knowledge or the knowledge of any such persons or entities (after due inquiry) is there any basis for any claim, action, suit, proceeding or investigation which affects or could affect, directly or indirectly, any of your assets, properties, rights or business; your right to operate and use your assets, properties or rights to carry on your business; and/or which affects or could affect your right to assume and carry out in all respects the duties, obligations and responsibilities specified in this Agreement.

22.1.5 Neither you nor any of your Principals is a party to any contract, agreement, covenant not to compete or other restriction of any type which may conflict with, or be breached by, the execution, delivery, consummation and/or performance of this Agreement.

22.1.6 All of your representations and warranties contained in this Agreement are complete, correct and accurate as of the date of execution of this Agreement and will survive any termination or expiration of this Agreement.

22.2 Your Acknowledgments

You shall acknowledge the truthfulness of the statements contained in Attachment 1 hereto. Your acknowledgements are an inducement for us to enter into this Agreement. You shall immediately notify us, prior to acknowledgment, if any statement in Attachment 1 is incomplete or incorrect.

Each of the parties hereto has caused this Agreement to be executed by its duly authorized representative as of the date first above written.

FRANCHISOR:
LIBC FRANCHISE LLC,
a New York limited liability company

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

FRANCHISEE:

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

ATTACHMENT 1

FRANCHISEE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT STATEMENT

Franchisee hereby acknowledges the following:

1. Franchisee has conducted an independent investigation of all aspects relating to the financial, operational and other aspects of the business of operating the Franchised Business. Franchisee further acknowledges that, except as may be set forth in Franchisor's Disclosure Document, no representations of performance (financial or otherwise) for the Franchised Business provided for in this Agreement has been made to Franchisee by Franchisor and Franchisee and any and all Principals hereby waive any claim against Franchisor for any business failure Franchisee may experience as a franchisee under this Agreement.

Initial

2. Franchisee has conducted an independent investigation of the business contemplated by this Agreement and understands and acknowledges that the business contemplated by this Agreement involves business risks making the success of the venture largely dependent upon the business abilities and participation of Franchisee and its efforts as an independent business operation.

Initial

3. Franchisee agrees that no claims of success or failure have been made to it or him or her prior to signing the Franchise Agreement and that it/she/he understands all the terms and conditions of the Franchise Agreement. Franchisee further acknowledges that the Franchise Agreement contains all oral and written agreements, representations and arrangements between the parties hereto, and any rights which the respective parties hereto may have had under any other previous contracts are hereby cancelled and terminated, and that this Agreement cannot be changed or terminated orally.

Initial

4. Franchisee has no knowledge of any representations by Franchisor or its officers, directors, shareholders, employees, sales representatives, agents or servants, about the business contemplated by the Franchise Agreement that are contrary to the terms of the Franchise Agreement or the documents incorporated herein. Franchisee acknowledges that no representations or warranties are made or implied, except as specifically set forth in the Franchise Agreement. Franchisee represents, as an inducement to Franchisor's entry into this Agreement, that it has made no misrepresentations in obtaining the Franchise Agreement.

Initial

5. Franchisor expressly disclaims the making of, and Franchisee acknowledges that it has not received or relied upon, any warranty or guarantee, express or implied, as to the potential volume, profits or success of the business venture contemplated by the Franchise Agreement.

Initial

6. Franchisee acknowledges that Franchisor's approval or acceptance of Franchisee's Business location does not constitute a warranty, recommendation or endorsement of the location for the Franchised Business, nor any assurance by Franchisor that the operation of the Franchised Business at the premises will be successful or profitable.

Initial

7. Franchisee acknowledges that it has received the LIBC Franchise LLC Franchise Disclosure Document with a complete copy of the Franchise Agreement and all related Attachments and agreements at least fourteen (14) calendar days prior to the date on which the Franchise Agreement was executed. Franchisee further acknowledges that Franchisee has read such Franchise Disclosure Document and understands its contents.

Initial

8. Franchisee acknowledges that it has had ample opportunity to consult with its own attorneys, accountants and other advisors and that the attorneys for Franchisor have not advised or represented Franchisee with respect to the Franchise Agreement or the relationship thereby created.

Initial

9. Franchisee, together with Franchisee's advisers, has sufficient knowledge and experience in financial and business matters to make an informed investment decision with respect to the Franchise granted by the Franchise Agreement.

Initial

10. Franchisee is aware of the fact that other present or future franchisees of Franchisor may operate under different forms of agreement(s), and consequently that Franchisor's obligations and rights with respect to its various franchisees may differ materially in certain circumstances.

Initial

11. It is recognized by the parties that Franchisor is also (or may become) a manufacturer or distributor of certain products under the Marks licensed herein; and it is understood that

Franchisor does not warrant that such products will not be sold within the Franchisee's Territory by others who may have purchased such products from Franchisor.

Initial

12. BY EXECUTING THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT, FRANCHISEE AND ANY PRINCIPAL, INDIVIDUALLY AND ON BEHALF OF FRANCHISEE'S AND SUCH PRINCIPAL'S HEIRS, LEGAL REPRESENTATIVES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS, HEREBY FOREVER RELEASE AND DISCHARGE LIBC FRANCHISE LLC, LONG ISLAND BAGEL CAFE, LLC, LIBC DISTRIBUTORS LLC, AND ANY OF ABOVE'S PARENT COMPANY, SUBSIDIARIES, DIVISIONS, AFFILIATES, SUCCESSORS, ASSIGNS AND DESIGNEES, AND THE FOREGOING ENTITIES' DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AGENTS, SHAREHOLDERS, SUCCESSORS, DESIGNEES AND REPRESENTATIVES FROM ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, DEMANDS AND JUDGMENTS RELATING TO OR ARISING UNDER THE STATEMENTS, CONDUCT, CLAIMS OR ANY OTHER AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE PARTIES EXECUTED PRIOR TO THE DATE OF THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, WHETHER PRESENTLY KNOWN OR UNKNOWN, SUSPECTED OR UNSUSPECTED, ARISING UNDER THE FRANCHISE, SECURITIES, TAX OR ANTITRUST LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES OR OF ANY STATE OR TERRITORY THEREOF.

Initial

FRANCHISEE:

By:_____

_____,
(Print Name, Title)

Date:_____

ATTACHMENT 2 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

ACCEPTED LOCATION AND PROTECTED TERRITORY

1. ACCEPTED LOCATION

Pursuant to Section 1.2 of the Franchise Agreement, the Café shall be located at the following Accepted Location:

2. PROTECTED TERRITORY:

Pursuant to Section 1.4 of the Franchise Agreement, the Protected Territory shall be:

FRANCHISEE:

FRANCHISOR:

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

ATTACHMENT 3 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

COLLATERAL ASSIGNMENT OF LEASE

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the undersigned (“Assignor”) assigns, transfers and sets over to LIBC Franchise LLC, a New York limited liability company (“Assignee”), all of Assignor’s right and title to and interest in that certain “Lease” a copy of which is attached as Exhibit A respecting premises commonly known as _____. This assignment is for collateral purposes only and except as specified in this document Assignee will have no liability or obligation of any kind whatsoever arising from or in connection with this assignment or the Lease unless and until Assignee takes possession of the premises the Lease demises according to the terms of this document and assumes Assignor’s obligations under the Lease.

Assignor represents and warrants to Assignee that it has full power and authority to assign the Lease and that Assignor has not previously assigned or transferred and is not otherwise obligated to assign or transfer any of its interest in the Lease or the premises it demises.

Upon Assignor’s default under the Lease or under the “Franchise Agreement” for a Café between Assignee and Assignor or in the event Assignor defaults under any document or instrument securing the Franchise Agreement Assignee has the right to take possession of the premises the Lease demises and expel Assignor from the premises. In that event Assignor will have no further right and title to or interest in the Lease but will remain liable to Assignee for any past due rental payments or other charges Assignee is required to pay Lessor to effectuate the assignment this document contemplates.

Assignor agrees that it will not suffer or permit any surrender, termination, amendment or modification of the Lease without Assignee’s prior written consent. Throughout the term of the Franchise Agreement Assignor agrees that it will elect and exercise all options to extend the term of or renew the Lease not less than thirty (30) days before the last day upon which the option must be exercised unless Assignee agrees otherwise in writing. Upon Assignee’s failure to agree otherwise in writing and upon Assignor’s failure to elect to extend or renew the Lease as required Assignor appoints Assignee as its true and lawful attorney-in-fact with the authority to exercise the extension or renewal options in the name, place and stead of Assignor for the sole purpose of effecting the extension or renewal.

ASSIGNEE:

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

ASSIGNOR:

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

CONSENT TO COLLATERAL ASSIGNMENT AND AGREEMENT OF LESSOR

The undersigned Lessor under the Lease:

(a) Agrees to notify Assignee in writing of and upon Assignor's failure to cure any default by Assignor under the Lease;

(b) Agrees that Assignee will have the right, but not the obligation, to cure any default by Assignor under the Lease within thirty (30) days after Lessor's delivery of notice of the default under section (a) above;

(c) Consents to the Collateral Assignment and agrees that if Assignee takes possession of the premises the Lease demises and confirms to Lessor that it has assumed the Lease as tenant, Lessor will recognize Assignee as tenant under the Lease, provided that Assignee cures within the thirty (30) day period noted in section (b) above Assignor's defaults under the Lease; and

(d) Agrees that Assignee may further assign the Lease to or enter into a sublease with a person, firm or corporation who agrees to assume the tenant's obligations under the Lease and is reasonably acceptable to Lessor and that upon that assignment Assignee will have no further liability or obligation under the Lease as assignee, tenant or otherwise, other than to certify that the additional assignee or sublessee operates the premises the Lease demises as a Café.

Dated: _____

_____, Lessor

ATTACHMENT 4 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

STATEMENT OF OWNERSHIP INTERESTS IN FRANCHISEE/ ENTITY

Name

Percentage of Ownership

ATTACHMENT 5 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

CONFIDENTIALITY AND NON-COMPETITION AGREEMENT

**(for trained employees, shareholders, officers, directors,
general partners, members and managers of Franchisee)**

In consideration of my being a _____ of _____ (“Franchisee”), and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is acknowledged, I hereby acknowledge and agree that:

1. Pursuant to a Franchise Agreement dated _____, 20____ (the “Franchise Agreement”), Franchisee has acquired the right and franchise from LIBC Franchise LLC (the “Company”) to establish and operate a Long Island Bagel Café (the “Franchised Business”) and the right to use in the operation of the Franchised Business the Company’s trade names, service marks, trademarks, logos, emblems, and indicia of origin (the “Proprietary Marks”), as they may be changed, improved and further developed from time to time in the Company’s sole discretion, only at the following authorized and Accepted Location: _____ (the “Accepted Location”).

2. The Company, as the result of the expenditure of time, skill, effort and resources has developed and owns a distinctive format and system (the “System”) relating to the establishment and operation of Franchised Businesses offering a menu that specializes in hand rolled, kettle cooked and baked bagels, made fresh daily, as well as a breakfast menu, lunch menu, and beverages. The Company possesses certain proprietary and confidential information relating to the operation of the System, which includes certain proprietary trade secrets, recipes, methods, techniques, formats, specifications, systems, procedures, methods of business practices and management, sales and promotional techniques and knowledge of, and experience in, the operation of the Franchised Business (the “Confidential Information”).

3. Any and all information, knowledge, know-how, and techniques which the Company specifically designates as confidential shall be deemed to be Confidential Information for purposes of this Agreement.

4. As _____ of the Franchisee, the Company and Franchisee will disclose the Confidential Information to me in furnishing to me training programs, the Company’s Confidential Operations Manual (the “Manual”), and other general assistance during the term of the Franchise Agreement.

5. I will not acquire any interest in the Confidential Information, other than the right to utilize it in the operation of the Franchised Business during the term of the Franchise Agreement, and the use or duplication of the Confidential Information for any use outside the System would constitute an unfair method of competition.

6. The Confidential Information is proprietary, involves trade secrets of the Company, and is disclosed to me solely on the condition that I agree, and I do hereby agree, that I shall hold in strict confidence all Confidential Information and all other information designated by the Company as confidential. Unless the Company otherwise agrees in writing, I will disclose and/or use the Confidential Information only in connection with my duties as _____ of the Franchisee, and will continue not to disclose any such information even after I cease to be in that position and will not use any such information even after I cease to be in that position unless I can demonstrate that such information has become generally known or easily accessible other than by the breach of an obligation of Franchisee under the Franchise Agreement.

7. Except as otherwise approved in writing by the Company, I shall not, while in my position with the Franchisee, either directly or indirectly for myself, or through, on behalf of, or in conjunction with any person, persons, partnership, or corporation, own, maintain, operate, engage in, act as a consultant for, perform services for, or have any interest in any food service business which: (a) is the same as, or substantially similar to, a Franchised Business; or (b) offers to sell or sells any products or services which are the same as, or substantially similar to, any of the products offered by a Franchised Business (a “Competitive Business”); and for a continuous uninterrupted period commencing upon the cessation or termination of my position with Franchisee, regardless of the cause for termination, or upon the expiration, termination, transfer, or assignment of the Franchise Agreement, whichever occurs first, and continuing for two (2) years thereafter, either directly or indirectly, for myself, or through, on behalf of, or in conjunction with any person, persons, partnership, or corporation, own, maintain, operate, engage in, act as a consultant for, perform services for, or have any interest in any Competitive Business that is, or is intended to be, located at or within:

7.1 Franchisee’s Protected Territory, as defined in the Franchise Agreement (“Franchisee’s Protected Territory”);

7.2 Five (5) miles of Franchisee’s Protected Territory; or

7.3 Five (5) miles of any Franchised Business operating under the System and the Proprietary Marks.

The prohibitions in this Paragraph 7 do not apply to my interests in or activities performed in connection with a Franchised Business. This restriction does not apply to my ownership of less than five percent (5%) beneficial interest in the outstanding securities of any publicly held company.

8. I agree that each of the foregoing covenants shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Agreement. If all or any portion of a covenant in this Agreement is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in an unappealed final decision to which the Company is a party, I expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant subsumed within the terms of such covenant that imposes the maximum duty permitted by law, as if the resulting covenant were separately stated in and made a part of this Agreement.

9. I understand and acknowledge that the Company shall have the right, in its sole discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant set forth in this Agreement, or any portion thereof, without my consent, effective immediately upon receipt by me of written notice thereof; and I agree to comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified.

10. The Company is a third-party beneficiary of this Agreement and may enforce it, solely and/or jointly with the Franchisee. I am aware that my violation of this Agreement will cause the Company and the Franchisee irreparable harm; therefore, I acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee and/or the Company may apply for the issuance of an injunction preventing me from violating this Agreement, and I agree to pay the Franchisee and the Company all the costs it/they incur(s), including, without limitation, legal fees and expenses, if this Agreement is enforced against me. Due to the importance of this Agreement to the Franchisee and the Company, any claim I have against the Franchisee or the Company is a separate matter and does not entitle me to violate or justify any violation of this Agreement.

11. This Agreement shall be construed under the laws of the State of New York, without regard to the application of state conflict of law rules. The only way this Agreement can be changed is in writing signed by both the Franchisee and me.

Signature

Name

Address

Title

ACKNOWLEDGED BY FRANCHISEE

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

ATTACHMENT 6 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT
ELECTRONIC TRANSFER AUTHORIZATION

**AUTHORIZATION TO HONOR CHARGES DRAWN BY AND
PAYABLE TO LIBC FRANCHISE LLC (“COMPANY”)**

Depositor hereby authorizes and requests _____ (the “Depository”) to initiate debit and credit entries to Depositor’s ☐ checking or ☐ savings account (select one) indicated below drawn by and payable to the order of Company by Electronic Funds Transfer, provided there are sufficient funds in said account to pay the amount upon presentation.

Depositor agrees that the Depository’s rights with respect to each such charge shall be the same as if it were a check drawn by the Depository and signed by Depositor. Depositor further agrees that if any such charge is dishonored, whether with or without cause and whether intentionally or inadvertently, the Depository shall be under no liability whatsoever.

Depository Name: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip Code: _____

Transit/ABA Number: _____ Account Number: _____

This authority is to remain in full force and effect until Company has received written notification from me (or either of us) of its termination in such time and in such manner to afford Company and Depository a responsible opportunity to act on such request.

Depositor: (Please Print)

Date Signed

Signature(s) of Depositor, as Printed Above

Please attach a voided blank check, for purposes of setting up Bank and Transit Numbers.

ATTACHMENT 7 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

INTERNET ADVERTISING, SOCIAL MEDIA AND TELEPHONE ACCOUNT AGREEMENT

THIS INTERNET ADVERTISING, SOCIAL MEDIA AND TELEPHONE ACCOUNT AGREEMENT (the “Agreement”) is made and entered into this day of _____ (the “Effective Date”) by and between LIBC Franchise LLC, a New York limited liability company (the “Franchisor”), and _____, a _____ (the “Franchisee”).

WHEREAS, Franchisee desires to enter into a franchise agreement with Franchisor for a Long Island Bagel Café business (“Franchise Agreement”) which will allow Franchisee to conduct internet-based advertising, maintain social media accounts, and use telephone listings linked to the Long Island Bagel Café brand.

WHEREAS, Franchisor would not enter into the Franchise Agreement without Franchisee’s agreement to enter into, comply with, and be bound by all the terms and provisions of this Agreement;

NOW, THEREFORE, for and in consideration of the foregoing and the mutual promises and covenants contained herein, and in further consideration of the Franchise Agreement and the mutual promises and covenants contained therein, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Definitions

All terms used but not otherwise defined in this Agreement shall have the meanings set forth in the Franchise Agreement. “Termination” of the Franchise Agreement shall include, but shall not be limited to, the voluntary termination, involuntary termination, or natural expiration thereof.

2. Internet Advertising and Telephone Accounts

2.1 Interest in Websites, Social Media Accounts and Other Electronic Listings. Franchisee may acquire (whether in accordance with or in violation of the Franchise Agreement) during the term of Franchise Agreement, certain right, title, or interest in and to certain domain names, social media accounts, hypertext markup language, uniform resource locator addresses, access to corresponding internet websites, and the right to hyperlink to certain websites and listings on various internet search engines (collectively, “Electronic Advertising”) related to the Franchised Business or the Marks.

2.2 Interest in Telephone Numbers and Listings. Franchisee has or will acquire during the term of the Franchise Agreement, certain right, title, and interest in and to those certain telephone numbers and regular, classified, internet page, and other telephone directory listings (collectively, the “Telephone Listings”) related to the Franchised Business or the Marks.

2.3 Transfer. On Termination of the Franchise Agreement, or on periodic request of Franchisor, Franchisee will immediately:

2.3.1 direct all internet service providers, domain name registries, internet search engines, social media companies, and other listing agencies (collectively, the “Internet Companies”) with which Franchisee has Electronic Advertising: (i) to transfer all of Franchisee’s interest in such Electronic Advertising to Franchisor; and (ii) to execute such documents and take such actions as may be necessary to effectuate such transfer. In the event Franchisor does not desire to accept any or all such Electronic

Advertising, Franchisee will immediately direct the Internet Companies to terminate such Electronic Advertising or will take such other actions with respect to the Electronic Advertising as Franchisor directs; and

2.3.2 direct all telephone companies, telephone directory publishers, and telephone directory listing agencies (collectively, the “Telephone Companies”) with which Franchisee has Telephone Listings: (i) to transfer all Franchisee’s interest in such Telephone Listings to Franchisor; and (ii) to execute such documents and take such actions as may be necessary to effectuate such transfer. In the event Franchisor does not desire to accept any or all such Telephone Listings, Franchisee will immediately direct the Telephone Companies to terminate such Telephone Listings or will take such other actions with respect to the Telephone Listings as Franchisor directs.

2.4 Appointment; Power of Attorney. Franchisee hereby constitutes and appoints Franchisor and any officer or agent of Franchisor, for Franchisor’s benefit under the Franchise Agreement and this Agreement or otherwise, with full power of substitution, as Franchisee’s true and lawful attorney-in-fact with full power and authority in Franchisee’s place and stead, and in Franchisee’s name or the name of any affiliated person or affiliated company of Franchisee, to take any and all appropriate action and to execute and deliver any and all documents that may be necessary or desirable to accomplish the purposes of this Agreement. Franchisee further agrees that this appointment constitutes a power coupled with an interest and is irrevocable until Franchisee has satisfied all of its obligations under the Franchise Agreement and any and all other agreements to which Franchisee and any of its affiliates on the one hand, and Franchisor and any of its affiliates on the other, are parties, including without limitation this Agreement. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, Franchisee hereby grants to Franchisor the power and right to do the following:

2.4.1 Direct the Internet Companies to transfer all Franchisee’s interest in and to the Electronic Advertising to Franchisor, or alternatively, to direct the Internet Companies to terminate any or all of the Electronic Advertising;

2.4.2 Direct the Telephone Companies to transfer all Franchisee’s interest in and to the Telephone Listings to Franchisor, or alternatively, to direct the Telephone Companies to terminate any or all of the Telephone Listings; and

2.4.3 Execute such standard assignment forms or other documents as the Internet Companies and/or Telephone Companies may require in order to affect such transfers or terminations of Franchisee’s interest.

2.5 Certification of Termination. Franchisee hereby directs the Internet Companies and Telephone Companies to accept, as conclusive proof of Termination of the Franchise Agreement, Franchisor’s written statement, signed by an officer or agent of Franchisor, that the Franchise Agreement has terminated.

2.6 Cessation of Obligations. After the Internet Companies and the Telephone Companies have duly transferred all Franchisee’s interests as described in paragraph 2.3 above to Franchisor, as between Franchisee and Franchisor, Franchisee will have no further interest in, or obligations with respect to the particular Electronic Advertising and/or Telephone Listing. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Franchisee will remain liable to each and all of the Internet Companies and Telephone Companies for the respective sums Franchisee is obligated to pay to them for obligations Franchisee incurred before the date Franchisor duly accepted the transfer of such interests, or for any other obligations not subject to the Franchise Agreement or this Agreement.

3. Miscellaneous

3.1 Release. Franchisee hereby releases, remises, acquits, and forever discharges each and all of the Internet Companies and/or Telephone Companies and each and all of their parent corporations, subsidiaries, affiliates, directors, officers, stockholders, employees, and agents, and the successors and assigns of any of them, from any and all rights, demands, claims, damage, losses, costs, expenses, actions, and causes of action whatsoever, whether in tort or in contract, at law or in equity, known or unknown, contingent or fixed, suspected or unsuspected, arising out of, asserted in, assertible in, or in any way related to this Agreement.

3.2 Indemnification. Franchisee is solely responsible for all costs and expenses related to its performance, its nonperformance, and Franchisor's enforcement of this Agreement, which costs and expenses Franchisee will pay Franchisor in full, without defense or setoff, on demand. Franchisee agrees that it will indemnify, defend, and hold harmless Franchisor and its affiliates, and its and their directors, officers, shareholders, partners, members, employees, agents, and attorneys, and the successors and assigns of any and all of them, from and against, and will reimburse Franchisor and any and all of them for, any and all loss, losses, damage, damages, claims, debts, claims, demands, or obligations that are related to or are based on this Agreement.

3.3 No Duty. The powers conferred on Franchisor hereunder are solely to protect Franchisor's interests and shall not impose any duty on Franchisor to exercise any such powers. Franchisee expressly agrees that in no event shall Franchisor be obligated to accept the transfer of any or all of Franchisee's interest in any matter hereunder.

3.4 Further Assurances. Franchisee agrees that at any time after the date of this Agreement, Franchisee will perform such acts and execute and deliver such documents as may be necessary to assist in or accomplish the purposes of this Agreement.

3.5 Successors, Assigns, and Affiliates. All Franchisor's rights and powers, and all Franchisee's obligations, under this Agreement shall be binding on Franchisee's successors, assigns, and affiliated persons or entities as if they had duly executed this Agreement.

3.6 Effect on Other Agreements. Except as otherwise provided in this Agreement, all provisions of the Franchise Agreement and attachments and schedules thereto shall remain in effect as set forth therein.

3.7 Survival. This Agreement shall survive the Termination of the Franchise Agreement.

3.8 Governing Law. This Agreement shall be governed by and construed under the laws of the State of New York, without regard to the application of New York conflict of law rules.

-Remainder of Page Intentionally Blank-

The undersigned have executed or caused their duly authorized representatives to execute this Agreement as of the Effective Date.

FRANCHISOR:

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

By: _____

_____, _____
(Print Name, Title)

FRANCHISEE:

By: _____

_____, _____
(Print Name, Title)

PRINCIPAL:

(Print Name)

PRINCIPAL:

(Print Name)

ATTACHMENT 8 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT
FORM OF GENERAL RELEASE

THIS AGREEMENT ("Agreement") is made and entered into this ____ day of _____, 20____, by and between LIBC Franchise LLC, a New York limited liability company having its principal place of business located at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556 (the "Franchisor"), and _____, a _____ with a principal address at _____ (hereinafter referred to as "Releasor"), wherein the parties hereto, in exchange for good and valuable consideration, the sufficiency and receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, and in reliance upon the representations, warranties, and comments herein are set forth, do agree as follows:

1. Release by Releasor:

Releasor does for itself, its successors and assigns, hereby release and forever discharge generally the Franchisor and any affiliate, wholly owned or controlled corporation, subsidiary, successor or assign thereof and any shareholder, officer, director, employee, or agent of any of them, from any and all claims, demands, damages, injuries, agreements and contracts, indebtedness, accounts of every kind or nature, whether presently known or unknown, suspected or unsuspected, disclosed or undisclosed, actual or potential, which Releasor may now have, or may hereafter claim to have or to have acquired against them of whatever source or origin, arising out of or related to any and all transactions of any kind or character at any time prior to and including the date hereof, including generally any and all claims at law or in equity, those arising under the common law or state or federal statutes, rules or regulations such as, by way of example only, franchising, securities and anti-trust statutes, rules or regulations, in any way arising out of or connected with the Agreement, and further promises never from this day forward, directly or indirectly, to institute, prosecute, commence, join in, or generally attempt to assert or maintain any action thereon against the Franchisor, any affiliate, successor, assign, parent corporation, subsidiary, director, officer, shareholder, employee, agent, executor, administrator, estate, trustee or heir, in any court or tribunal of the United States of America, any state thereof, or any other jurisdiction for any matter or claim arising before execution of this Agreement. In the event Releasor breaches any of the promises covenants, or undertakings made herein by any act or omission, Releasor shall pay, by way of indemnification, all costs and expenses of the Franchisor caused by the act or omission, including reasonable attorneys' fees.

2. Releasor hereto represents and warrants that no portion of any claim, right, demand, obligation, debt, guarantee, or cause of action released hereby has been assigned or transferred by Releasor party to any other party, firm or entity in any manner including, but not limited to, assignment or transfer by subrogation or by operation of law. In the event that any claim, demand or suit shall be made or institute against any released party because of any such purported assignment, transfer or subrogation, the assigning or transferring party agrees to indemnify and hold such released party free and harmless from and against any such claim, demand or suit, including reasonable costs and attorneys' fees incurred in connection therewith. It is further agreed that this indemnification and hold harmless agreement shall not require payment to such claimant as a condition precedent to recovery under this paragraph.

3. Each party acknowledges and warrants that his, her or its execution of this Agreement is free and voluntary.

4. New York law shall govern the validity and interpretation of this Agreement, as well as the performance due thereunder. This Agreement is binding upon and inures to the benefit of the respective assigns, successors, heirs and legal representatives of the parties hereto.

5. In the event that any action is filed to interpret any provision of this Agreement, or to enforce any of the terms thereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to its reasonable attorneys' fees and costs incurred therein and said action must be filed in the State of New York.

6. This Agreement may be signed in counterparts, each of which shall be binding against the party executing it and considered as the original.

The parties hereto, intending to be legally bound hereby, have executed this agreement effective as of the date first above.

RELEASOR:

(Name)

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC:

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

ATTACHMENT 9 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT CERTIFICATION

LIBC Franchise LLC (“Franchisor”) and _____ (“Franchisee”) are parties to a Franchise Agreement dated _____, for the operation of a Long Island Bagel Café at _____ (the “Franchised Business”). In accordance with Article 2 of the Franchise Agreement, Franchisee certifies to Franchisor that, to the best of Franchisee’s knowledge, the Franchised Business and its adjacent areas comply with all applicable federal, state and local accessibility laws, statutes, codes, rules, regulations and standards, including but not limited to the Americans with Disabilities Act. Franchisee acknowledges that it is an independent contractor and the requirement of this certification by Franchisee does not constitute ownership, control, leasing or operation of the Franchised Business. Franchisee acknowledges that Franchisee has relied on the information contained in this certification. Furthermore, Franchisee acknowledge its obligation under this Franchise Agreement to indemnify Franchisor and the officers, directors, and employees of Franchisor in connection with any and all claims, losses, costs, expenses, liabilities, compliance costs, and damages incurred by the indemnified party(ies) as a result of any matters associated with Franchisee’s compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act, as well as the costs, including attorneys’ fees, related to the same.

FRANCHISEE

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

ATTACHMENT 10 TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT

GUARANTY AND ASSUMPTION OF OBLIGATIONS

GUARANTY

This Guaranty and Covenant (this “Guaranty”) is given by the undersigned (“Guarantor”) on _____ to LIBC Franchise, LLC a New York limited liability company (“Franchisor”), in order to induce Franchisor to enter into that certain Franchise Agreement dated of even date herewith (the “Franchise Agreement”) with _____, a(n) _____, and _____ (collectively “Franchisee”).

Guarantor acknowledges that Guarantor is the spouse of Franchisee’s Principal, as that term is used in the Franchise Agreement.

Guarantor acknowledges that Guarantor has read the terms and conditions of the Franchise Agreement and acknowledges that the execution of this Guaranty are in partial consideration for, and a condition to the granting of, the rights granted in the Franchise Agreement to Franchisee, and that Franchisor would not have granted these rights without the execution of this Guaranty by Guarantor.

Guarantor hereby individually makes, agrees to be bound by, and agrees to perform, all of the monetary obligations and non-competition covenants and agreements of the Franchisee as set forth in the Franchise Agreement, including but not limited to, the covenants set forth in Article 10 of the Franchise Agreement (“Guaranteed Obligations”). Guarantor shall perform and/or make punctual payment to Franchisor of the Guaranteed Obligations in accordance with the terms of the Franchise Agreement or other applicable document forthwith upon demand by Franchisor.

This Guaranty is an absolute and unconditional continuing guaranty of payment and performance of the Guaranteed Obligations. This Guaranty shall not be discharged by renewal of any claims guaranteed by this instrument, change in ownership or control of the Franchisee entity, transfer of the Franchise Agreement, the suffering of any indulgence to any debtor, extension of time of payment thereof, nor the discharge of Franchisee by bankruptcy, operation of law or otherwise. Presentment, demand, protest, notice of protest and dishonor, notice of default or nonpayment and diligence in collecting any obligation under any agreement between Franchisee and Franchisor are each and all waived by Guarantor and/or acknowledged as inapplicable. Guarantor waives notice of amendment of any agreement between Franchisee and Franchisor and notice of demand for payment by Franchisee. Guarantor further agrees to be bound by any and all amendments and changes to any agreement between Franchisee and Franchisor.

Franchisor may pursue its rights against Guarantor without first exhausting its remedies against Franchisee and without joining any other guarantor hereto and no delay on the part of Franchisor in the exercise of any right or remedy shall operate as a waiver of such right or remedy, and no single or partial exercise by Franchisor of any right or remedy shall preclude the further exercise of such right or remedy.

If other guarantors have guaranteed any and or all of the Guaranteed Obligations, their liability shall be joint and several to that of Guarantor.

Until all of the Guaranteed Obligations have been paid in full and/or performed in full, Guarantor shall not have any right of subrogation, unless expressly given to Guarantor in writing by Franchisor.

All Franchisor's rights, powers and remedies hereunder and under any other agreement now or at any time hereafter in force between Franchisor and Guarantor shall be cumulative and not alternative and shall be in addition to all rights, powers and remedies given to Franchisor by law.

Should any one or more provisions of this Guaranty be determined to be illegal or unenforceable, all other provisions nevertheless shall remain effective.

This Guaranty shall extend to and inure to the benefit of Franchisor and its successors and assigns and shall be binding on Guarantor and its successors and assigns.

Guarantor has signed this Guaranty as of the date set forth above.

GUARANTOR - SPOUSE OF FRANCHISEE'S PRINCIPAL:

Print Name: _____

**Exhibit C to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

**MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT
LIBC FRANCHISE LLC**

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC

MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1: GRANT	2
SECTION 2: RESERVATION FEE; INITIAL FRANCHISE FEES.....	3
SECTION 3: SCHEDULE AND MANNER FOR EXERCISING DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS.....	3
SECTION 4: DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS	4
SECTION 5: RENEWAL	5
SECTION 6: TERM AND RIGHT OF FIRST REFUSAL	5
SECTION 7: YOUR OBLIGATIONS	6
SECTION 8: OUR SERVICES	7
SECTION 9: DEFAULT AND TERMINATION	7
SECTION 10: OBLIGATIONS FOLLOWING TERMINATION	9
SECTION 11: TRANSFER OF INTEREST	9
SECTION 12: COVENANTS	11
SECTION 13: NOTICES.....	13
SECTION 14: INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR AND INDEMNIFICATION	13
SECTION 15: APPROVALS	14
SECTION 16: NON-WAIVER.....	14
SECTION 17: SEVERABILITY AND CONSTRUCTION.....	14
SECTION 18: ENTIRE AGREEMENT	15
SECTION 19: DISPUTE RESOLUTION; APPLICABLE LAW	15
SECTION 20: TIMELY PERFORMANCE	17
SECTION 21: ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	17
SECTION 22: EFFECTIVE DATE.....	17

LIST OF ATTACHMENTS:

- ATTACHMENT 1: CERTIFICATION BY MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER
- ATTACHMENT 2: MINIMUM PERFORMANCE SCHEDULE
- ATTACHMENT 3: DEVELOPMENT AREA

THIS MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT (“Agreement”) is made and entered into this day of , by and between LIBC Franchise LLC, a New York limited liability company having its principal place of business at 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350, Uniondale, New York 11556 (“we”, “us” or “our”), and _____ whose principal address is _____ (hereinafter “you” or “your”).

W I T N E S S E T H:

WHEREAS, as the result of the expenditure of time, skill, effort and money, we and our affiliates have developed and own a unique and distinctive system (hereinafter “System”) relating to the establishment and operation of a quick-serve restaurant offering a menu that specializes in hand rolled, kettle cooked and baked bagels, made fresh daily, as well as a breakfast menu, lunch menu, and beverages (“Café” or “Franchised Business”), provided on a dine-in, take-out, catering, and delivery basis;

WHEREAS, the distinguishing characteristics of the System include, without limitation, distinctive exterior and interior design, décor, color scheme, and furnishings; proprietary products and ingredients; proprietary recipes and special menu items; uniform standards, specifications, and procedures for operations; quality and uniformity of products and services offered; procedures for inventory, management and financial control; training and assistance; and advertising and promotional programs; all of which may be changed, improved, and further developed by us from time to time;

WHEREAS, the System is identified by means of certain trade names, service marks, trademarks, logos, emblems and indicia of origin, including, but not limited to, the marks “Long Island Bagel Café” and “LIBC”, and such other trade names, service marks, and trademarks as are now designated (and may hereafter be designated by us in writing) for use in connection with the System (hereinafter referred to as “Marks” or “Proprietary Marks”);

WHEREAS, we and our affiliates continue to develop, use and control the use of such Marks in order to identify for the public the source of services and products marketed thereunder and under the System, and to represent the System’s high standards of quality, appearance and service; and

WHEREAS, you wish to obtain certain development rights to open and operate Cafés operating under the Marks and the System within the Development Area described in this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, the parties, in consideration of the undertakings and commitments of each party to the other party stated herein, hereby agree as follows:

SECTION 1: GRANT

1.1 We hereby grant to you, pursuant to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, certain development rights (“Development Rights”) to establish and operate _____ (_____) franchised Cafés, and to use the Marks and System solely in connection therewith, at specific locations to be designated in separate Franchise Agreements executed as provided in Section 3.1 hereof, and pursuant to the schedule established in Attachment 2 of this Agreement (hereinafter “Minimum Performance Schedule”). Each Café developed hereunder shall be located in the area described in Attachment 3 of this Agreement (hereinafter “Development Area”). The Minimum Performance Schedule shall be deemed completed, and this Agreement shall expire, upon the opening of the last Long Island Bagel Café to be developed hereunder.

1.2 Each Café for which a Development Right is granted hereunder shall be established and operated pursuant to a Franchise Agreement to be entered into between you and us in accordance with Section 3.1 hereof.

1.3 Except as otherwise provided in this Agreement, we shall not establish, nor franchise anyone other than you to establish, a Café in the Development Area during the term of this Agreement, provided you are not in default hereunder.

1.4 This Agreement is not a Franchise Agreement and does not grant to you any right to use the Marks or System.

1.5 You shall have no right under this Agreement to franchise others under the Marks or System.

SECTION 2: RESERVATION FEE; INITIAL FRANCHISE FEES

2.1 In consideration of the development rights granted herein, you shall pay to us a Reservation Fee of _____ Thousand Dollars (\$_____), payable upon execution of this Agreement (“Reservation Fee”). The Reservation Fee is calculated as one hundred percent (100%) of the initial franchise fee for the first Café to be developed hereunder, plus a deposit equal to fifty percent (50%) of the reduced initial franchise fee for each additional Café to be developed hereunder.

2.2 The Reservation Fee shall be fully earned by us upon execution of this Agreement, shall be non-refundable, and shall be for administrative and other expenses incurred by us and for the development opportunities lost or deferred as a result of the Development Rights granted to you herein.

2.3 The initial franchise fee payable for each Café to be developed hereunder shall be as follows:

2.3.1 For the first Café to be developed hereunder, the initial franchise fee is Thirty Five Thousand Dollars (\$35,000);

2.3.2 For the second Café to be developed hereunder, the initial franchise fee is Thirty Thousand Dollars (\$30,000);

2.3.3 For the third Café to be developed hereunder, the initial franchise fee is Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$25,000); and

2.3.4 For any additional Cafés to be developed hereunder, the initial franchise fee is Twenty Thousand Dollars (\$20,000).

2.4 The initial franchise fee for the first Café has been paid in full in the Reservation Fee. You shall execute the Franchise Agreement for the first Café contemporaneously with your execution of this Agreement and a portion of the Reservation Fee will be used to satisfy the initial franchise fee for such first Café in full. For each additional Café developed hereunder, we will apply a *pro rata* portion of the Reservation Fee toward the initial franchise fee due for such Café. The balance of the initial franchise fee is payable to us in a lump sum upon execution of the Franchise Agreement for that Café.

SECTION 3: SCHEDULE AND MANNER FOR EXERCISING DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS

3.1 You shall assume all responsibility and expense for locating potential sites for Cafés and shall submit to us for our evaluation and approval, in the form specified by us, a description of the site, the terms of the lease or purchase, a market feasibility study for the site and such other information and materials as we may reasonably require, together with a letter of intent or other evidence satisfactory to us which confirms your favorable prospects for obtaining the site. We shall have thirty (30) days after receipt

of such information and materials from you to accept or decline the site in our sole discretion. If the site is accepted, you will then be presented with the Franchise Agreement for execution.

3.2 Recognizing that time is of the essence, you agree to exercise each of the Development Rights granted hereunder in the manner specified herein, and in accordance with the Minimum Performance Schedule. Your failure to adhere to the Minimum Performance Schedule shall constitute a default under this Agreement as provided in Section 9.1 hereof. Under no circumstances may you open a Café for business unless and until there is a fully executed Franchise Agreement in place for such Café and we have been paid all amounts payable to us.

3.3 You shall exercise each Development Right granted herein only by executing a Franchise Agreement for each Café at a site approved by us in the Development Area as hereinafter provided within ten (10) days after receipt of said Franchise Agreement from us for the approved site and return same to us for our execution. The Franchise Agreement for the first Development Right exercised hereunder has been executed contemporaneously with this Agreement. The Franchise Agreement for each additional Development Right exercised hereunder shall be the then-current Franchise Agreement, subject to any non-material changes therein which are required to be made by changes in any applicable law, regulation or ordinance in effect from time to time. In the event we do not receive the properly executed Franchise Agreement with the appropriate number of copies within said ten (10) days from delivery thereof to you, our approval of the site shall be void and you shall have no rights with respect to said site.

3.4 You acknowledge that the approval of a particular site for a Café by us shall not be deemed to be an assurance or guaranty that the Café will operate successfully or at a profit from such site.

3.5 You may enter into the initial Franchise Agreement or any subsequent Franchise Agreement as required under this Agreement using a newly formed entity, such as a limited liability company, corporation or partnership, for the sole purpose of entering into a Franchise Agreement for each Café thereto, provided that you shall also personally sign such Franchise Agreement as a principal.

SECTION 4: DEVELOPMENT RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

4.1 Subject to the provisions of this Agreement, we grant to you the Development Rights, as described in Section 1.1. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, Development Rights under this Agreement may or may not, in our sole discretion, include the right to develop Cafés at any “Non-Traditional Sites”. Non-Traditional Sites include without limitation gas stations or convenience stores; transportation facilities, including airports, train stations, subways and rail and bus stations; military bases and government offices; sports facilities, including stadiums and arenas; amusement parks, zoos and convention centers; car and truck rest stops and travel centers; educational facilities; recreational theme parks; hospitals; hotels; business or industrial foodservice venues; venues in which foodservice is or may be provided by a master concessionaire or contract foodservice provider; Indian reservations; casinos; or any similar captive market location not reasonably available to you, whether currently existing or constructed or established subsequent to the date hereof.

4.2 Provided you are in full compliance with all the terms and conditions of this Agreement, including without limitation your development obligations described in Section 3.2 and the Minimum Performance Schedule, and you are in full compliance with all of your obligations under all franchise agreements executed pursuant to this Agreement, then during the term of this Agreement neither we nor any of our affiliates will develop or operate or grant franchises for the development or operation of Cafés within the Development Area, except the franchises that are granted to you pursuant to this Agreement and except as otherwise expressly provided in this Agreement.

4.3 Upon the termination or expiration of this Agreement, we and our affiliates shall have the right to develop and operate, and to grant to others development rights and franchises to develop and operate, Cafés within the Development Area subject only to the territorial rights granted to you with respect to Cafés operated by you pursuant to the Franchise Agreements and subject, further, to the right of first refusal described in Section 6 below.

4.4 We and our affiliates retain all rights with respect to Cafés, the Marks and the sale of any goods and services, anywhere in the world, including, without limitation, the right:

4.4.1 to produce, offer and sell and to grant others the right to produce, offer and sell the products offered at Cafés and any other goods displaying the Marks or other trade and service marks through alternative distribution channels, as described below, both within and outside the Development Area, and under any terms and conditions we deem appropriate. “Alternative distribution channels” include, but are not limited to, the internet, catalog sales, grocery stores, club stores, specialty food stores, telemarketing or other direct marketing sales;

4.4.2 to operate and to grant others the right to operate Cafés located outside the Development Area under any terms and conditions we deem appropriate and regardless of proximity to a Café;

4.4.3 to operate and to grant others the right to operate Cafés at Non-Traditional Sites within and outside the Development Area under any terms and conditions we deem appropriate, subject to the right of first refusal described in Section 6.2; and

4.4.4 to acquire and operate a business operating one or more restaurants or food service businesses located or operating in the Development Area, except that these businesses will not operate using the Proprietary Marks.

SECTION 5: RENEWAL

This Agreement shall not be subject to renewal; however, if you wish to purchase a new Development Area and continue to develop Cafés, we will, in good faith, negotiate a new Multi-Unit Development Agreement with you.

SECTION 6: TERM AND RIGHT OF FIRST REFUSAL

6.1 Unless sooner terminated in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the term of this Agreement and all Development Rights granted hereunder shall expire on the date the last Café is opened pursuant to the Minimum Performance Schedule established in Attachment 2.

6.2 If, during the term of this Agreement, a Non-Traditional Site becomes available in your Development Area, then we may, in our sole discretion, offer to you the opportunity to develop a Café at such Non-Traditional Site. You shall have thirty (30) days after receipt of our notice in which to accept or decline this right of first refusal. Your failure to notify us within such thirty (30) day period shall be interpreted that you have declined the right of first refusal. Nothing in this Agreement shall require us to provide you with a right of first refusal for a Non-Traditional Site.

6.3 Upon completion of the Minimum Performance Schedule, if we determine that it is desirable to operate one or more additional Cafés in the Development Area, and provided you have timely complied with the Minimum Performance Schedule and are then in compliance with all terms and conditions of all Franchise Agreements, you shall have a right of first refusal to obtain the Development

Rights to such additional Cafés upon such reasonable terms and conditions as are then determined by us including, but not limited to, the imposition of a new Reservation Fee and the payment of the then-current initial fees upon execution of the then-current Franchise Agreements. In such case, we shall advise you in writing of the terms and conditions for the acquisition of the Development Rights for such additional Cafés. You must notify us in writing within sixty (60) days of the receipt of such notice whether you wish to acquire the Development Rights to such additional Cafés. If you do not exercise this right of first refusal, in whole, we may, following the expiration of the sixty (60) day period, grant the Development Rights to such additional Cafés to any other person or persons on the same terms and conditions or we may elect to develop and construct any of such additional Cafés.

SECTION 7: YOUR OBLIGATIONS

You acknowledge and agree that:

7.1 Except as otherwise provided herein, this Agreement includes only the right to select sites for the establishment of Cafés and to submit the same to us for our approval in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. This Agreement does not include the grant of a license by us to you of any rights to use the Marks, the System, or to open or operate any Cafés within the Development Area. You shall obtain the license to use such additional rights at each Café upon the execution of each Franchise Agreement by both you and us and only in accordance with the terms of each Franchise Agreement.

7.2 The Development Rights granted hereunder are personal to you and cannot be sold, assigned, transferred or encumbered, in whole or in part, except as stated in Section 11 hereof.

7.3 Except as provided in Section 6 hereof, the Development Rights granted hereunder are non-exclusive, and we retain the right, in our sole discretion:

7.3.1 To continue to construct and operate other Cafés and to use the System and the Marks at any location outside the Development Area, and to license others to do so.

7.3.2 To develop, use and franchise the rights to any trade names, trademarks, service marks, trade symbols, emblems, signs, slogans, insignia, or copyrights not designated by us as Marks for use with different franchise systems for the sale of the different products or services not in connection with the System at any location, on such terms and conditions as we may deem advisable and without granting you any rights therein.

7.3.3 To develop, merchandise, sell and license others to sell any of our products, proprietary or otherwise, presently existing or to be developed in the future, to the public through alternative distribution channels outside or inside of the Development Area and to use the Marks in connection therewith.

7.4 You have sole responsibility for the performance of all obligations arising out of the operation of your business pursuant to this Agreement, including, but not limited to, the payment when due of any and all taxes levied or assessed by reason of such operation.

7.5 In all public records, in your relationship with other persons, and in any documents, you shall indicate clearly the independent ownership of your business and that the operations of said business are separate and distinct from the operation of a Long Island Bagel Café.

7.6 You shall at all times preserve in confidence any and all materials and information furnished or disclosed to you by us and you shall disclose such information or materials only to such of

your employees or agents who must have access to it in connection with their employment. You shall not at any time, without our prior written consent, copy, duplicate, record or otherwise reproduce such materials or information, in whole or in part, nor otherwise make the same available to any unauthorized person.

7.7 You shall comply with all requirements of federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations.

7.8 You shall at no time have the right to sub-franchise any of your Development Rights hereunder.

7.9 In no event shall any Café be opened for business unless and until a Franchise Agreement for such Café has been fully executed and the initial franchise fee for such Café has been fully paid.

SECTION 8: OUR SERVICES

We shall, at our expense, provide the following services:

8.1 Review your site selection for conformity to our standards and criteria for selection and acquisition of sites upon our receipt of your written request for approval thereof.

8.2 Assist you in determining the layout and configuration of each Café once the location has been approved. After you and we have determined the layout and configuration of each Café, you must arrange for site plan and build-out plans and specifications to be prepared and submitted to us for our review and approval.

8.3 Review of your site plan and final build-out plans and specifications for conformity to the construction standards and specifications of the System, upon our receipt of your written request for approval thereof.

8.4 Provide such other resources and assistance as may hereafter be developed and offered by us to our other multi-unit developers.

SECTION 9: DEFAULT AND TERMINATION

9.1 The occurrence of any of the following events of default shall constitute good cause for us, at our option and without prejudice to any other rights or remedies provided for hereunder or by law or equity, to terminate this Agreement upon notice to you without opportunity to cure the default, except where prohibited by any applicable state or federal law, whereupon this Agreement shall be terminated in accordance with the provisions of any such law:

9.1.1 If you shall, in any respect, fail to meet the Minimum Performance Schedule.

9.1.2 If you shall purport to effect any assignment other than in accordance with Section 11 hereof.

9.1.3 Except as provided in Section 11 hereof, if you attempt to sell, assign, transfer or encumber this Agreement prior to the time that at least thirty-four percent (34%) of the Cafés to be constructed and opened for business in accordance with the Minimum Performance Schedule are, in fact, open or under construction.

9.1.4 If you make, or have made, any material misrepresentation to us in connection with obtaining this Agreement, any site approval hereunder, or any Franchise Agreement.

9.1.5 If you default in the performance of any obligation under any Franchise Agreement with us, provided such default results in the termination of the Franchise Agreement.

9.1.6 If you suffer a violation of any law, ordinance, rule or regulation of a governmental agency in connection with the operation of the Café and permit the same to go uncorrected after notification thereof, unless there is a bona fide dispute as to the violation or legality of such law, ordinance, rule or regulation, and you promptly resort to courts or forums of appropriate jurisdiction to contest such violation or legality.

9.1.7 If you or an owner of yours owning a twenty-five percent (25%) or more interest in you is convicted in a court of competent jurisdiction of an indictable offense punishable by a term of imprisonment in excess of one (1) year.

9.1.8 If any of you shall become insolvent or make a general assignment for the benefit of creditors; if a petition in bankruptcy is filed by you or such a petition is filed against and not opposed by you; if you are adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent; if a bill in equity or other proceeding for the appointment of a receiver or other custodian for you or your business or assets is filed and consented to by you; if a receiver or other custodian (permanent or temporary) of your assets or property, or any part thereof, is appointed by any court of competent jurisdiction; if proceedings for a composition with creditors under any state or federal law should be instituted by or against you; if a final judgment remains unsatisfied or of record for thirty (30) days or longer (unless a *supersedeas* bond is filed); if execution is levied against your business or property; if suit to foreclose any lien or mortgage against the premises or equipment is instituted against you and not dismissed within thirty (30) days; or if the real or personal property of the business shall be sold after levy thereupon by any sheriff, marshal, or constable.

9.1.9 If you or any of your affiliates cease to operate all of the Cafés developed pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.

9.2 Upon occurrence of any of the events stated in this Section 9.2, we may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies contained in this Agreement or provided by law or equity, terminate this Agreement. Such termination shall be effective thirty (30) days after written notice (or such other notice as may be required by applicable state law) is given by us to you of any of such events, if such defaults are not cured within such period:

9.2.1 If you shall use the System or Marks, or any other names, marks, systems, insignia, symbols or rights which are our property except pursuant to, and in accordance with, a valid and effective Franchise Agreement.

9.2.2 If you shall have any interest, direct or indirect, in the ownership or operation of any food service business engaged in the sale of products the same as or substantially similar to those permitted to be sold by a Long Island Bagel Café or in any food service business which looks like, copies or imitates the Café or operates in a manner tending to have such effect other than pursuant to a valid and effective Franchise Agreement with us.

9.2.3 If you shall fail to remit to us any payments pursuant to Section 2 when same are due.

9.2.4 If you shall begin work upon any Café at any site unless all the conditions stated in Section 3 hereof have been met.

9.2.5 If you fail to obtain our prior written approval or consent, including but not limited to site approval or site plan approval, as expressly required by this Agreement.

9.2.6 If you default in the performance of any other obligation under this Agreement.

9.2.7 If you open any Café for business before a Franchise Agreement for such Café has been fully executed and the initial franchise fee due to us has been paid.

9.2.8 If you fail to obtain execution of a covenant required by Section 12.8 below.

SECTION 10: OBLIGATIONS FOLLOWING TERMINATION

10.1 Upon termination of this Agreement becoming effective for any reason, or upon expiration of the term hereof, you agree as follows:

10.1.1 To cease immediately any attempts to select sites on which to establish Cafés.

10.1.2 To cease immediately to hold yourself out in any way as a multi-unit developer of ours or to do anything which would indicate a relationship between you and us.

10.2 No right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to us is exclusive of any other right or remedy provided or permitted by law or in equity.

SECTION 11: TRANSFER OF INTEREST

11.1 This Agreement is personal to you and you shall neither sell, assign, transfer nor encumber this Agreement, the Development Rights, or any other interest hereunder, nor suffer or permit any such assignment, transfer or encumbrance to occur directly, indirectly or contingently by agreement or by operation of law without our prior written consent. You understand that this Agreement may not be pledged, mortgaged, hypothecated, given as security for an obligation or in any manner encumbered. The assignment or transfer of any interest, except in accordance with this Section shall constitute a material breach of this Agreement.

11.2 You have represented to us that you are entering into this Agreement with the intention of complying with its terms and conditions and not for the purpose of resale of the Development Rights hereunder. Therefore, you agree that any attempt to assign this Agreement, prior to the time that at least thirty-four percent (34%) of the Café(s) to be constructed hereunder are opened or under construction, shall be deemed to be an event of default.

11.3 If you receive from an unaffiliated third party and desire to accept a bona fide written offer to purchase your business, Development Rights and interests, we shall have the option, exercisable within thirty (30) days after receipt of written notice setting forth the name and address of the prospective purchaser, the price and terms of such offer, and a copy of such offer and the other information stated in this Section 11.3, to purchase such business, Development Rights and interests, including your right to develop sites within the Development Area, on the same terms and conditions as offered by said third party. In order that we may have information sufficient to enable us to determine whether to exercise this option, we may require you to deliver to us certified financial statements as of the end of your most recent fiscal year and such other information about your business and operations as we may request. If we decline or do

not accept the offer in writing within thirty (30) days, you may, within thirty (30) days from the expiration of the option period, sell, assign and transfer your business, Development Rights and interest to said third party, provided we have consented to such transfer as required by this Section 11. Any material change in the terms of the offer prior to closing of the sale to such third party shall constitute a new offer, subject to the same rights of first refusal by us or our nominee, as in the case of an initial offer. Our failure to exercise the option afforded by this Section 11.3 shall not constitute a waiver of any other provision of this Agreement, including all of the requirements of this Section with respect to the proposed transfer.

11.4 You acknowledge and agree that the restrictions on transfer imposed herein are reasonable and are necessary to protect the Development Rights, the System and the Marks, as well as our reputation and image, and are for the protection of us, you and other multi-unit developers and franchisees. Any assignment or transfer permitted by this Section 11 shall not be effective until we receive a completely executed copy of all transfer documents, and we consent in writing thereto.

11.5 Except as provided in Section 11.2 hereof, we agree not to unreasonably withhold our consent to a sale, assignment or transfer by you hereunder. Consent to such transfer otherwise permitted or permissible as reasonable may be refused unless:

11.5.1 All of your obligations created by this Agreement, all other franchise documents, including all Franchise Agreements, and the relationship created hereunder are assumed by the transferee.

11.5.2 All ascertained or liquidated debts of you to us or our affiliated or subsidiary corporations are paid.

11.5.3 You are not in default hereunder.

11.5.4 We are reasonably satisfied that the transferee meets all of our requirements for new multi-unit developers, including but not limited to, good reputation and character, business acumen, operational ability, management skills, financial strength and other business considerations.

11.5.5 Transferee executes or, in appropriate circumstances, causes all necessary parties to execute, our standard form of Multi-Unit Development Agreement, Franchise Agreements for all Cafés open or under construction hereunder, and such other then-current ancillary agreements being required by us of new multi-unit developers on the date of transfer.

11.5.6 You execute a general release, in a form satisfactory to us, of any and all claims against us, our officers, directors, employees and principal stockholders of any and all claims and causes of action that you may have against us or any subsidiary or affiliated corporations in any way relating to this Agreement or the performance or non-performance thereof by us.

11.5.7 When you submit your request for our approval of the transfer, you shall pay to us a transfer fee equal to Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500) per remaining Development Right being transferred to cover our reasonable costs in effecting the transfer and in providing training and other initial assistance to transferee. You understand and acknowledge that such transfer fee shall be in addition to any transfer fees payable under the Franchise Agreement(s) for the Café(s) being transferred to the same transferee.

11.6 If the proposed transfer is a transfer between existing owners of the Multi-Unit Developer hereunder, or if you wish to add a new owner, then you shall submit to us, in writing, a request for our approval of the proposed transfer among owners or to a new owner together with any information we require in order to evaluate the proposed transfer, including, without limitation, financial and other information

relating to the proposed transferee. Our approval of your request will not be unreasonably withheld. If you are requesting to add an owner, the proposed new owner must meet our criteria, including financial capability and that the new owner is not participating in a competing business, and the new ownership structure shall not change the majority ownership in you. If we approve a new owner in you, such new owner shall be bound by the covenants of confidentiality and non-competition set forth herein and shall execute any documents we may require to enforce these covenants.

11.6 Upon the death or permanent disability of any person with an interest of more than fifty percent (50%) in this Agreement, the executor, administrator or personal representative of such person shall transfer his interest to a third party approved by us within twelve (12) months. Such transfers, including, without limitation, transfers by devise or inheritance, shall be subject to the same conditions as any *inter vivos* transfer. However, in the case of transfer by devise or inheritance, if the heirs or beneficiaries of any such person are unable to meet the conditions stated in Section 11.1 hereof, the personal representative of the deceased shall have a reasonable time, not to exceed twelve (12) months from the date said personal representative is appointed, to dispose of the deceased's interest in you or in the Development Rights, which disposition shall be subject to all the terms and conditions for transfers contained in this Agreement. It is understood and agreed, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, the Minimum Performance Schedule shall be complied with as though no such death or mental incapacity had occurred. In the event the interest described above is not disposed of within such time, we shall have the right to terminate this Agreement, provided such termination had not previously occurred for failure to perform pursuant to the Minimum Performance Schedule, upon ninety (90) days' notice to your representative, or we shall have the right to re-purchase same at the same price being sought by your representative.

11.7 Our consent to a transfer by you or of any of the Development Rights pursuant to this Section shall not constitute a waiver of any claims we may have against the transferring party, nor shall it be deemed a waiver of our right to demand exact compliance with any of the terms of this Agreement by the transferee.

11.8 We shall have the right to assign this Agreement and all of our attendant rights and privileges to any person, firm, corporation or other entity provided that, with respect to any assignment resulting in the subsequent performance by the assignee of our functions: (i) the assignee shall, at the time of such assignment, be financially responsible and economically capable of performing our obligations; and (ii) the assignee shall expressly assume and agree to perform such obligations.

You expressly affirm and agree that we may sell our assets, our rights to the Marks or to the System outright to a third party; may go public; may engage in a private placement of some or all of our securities; may merge, acquire other corporations, or be acquired by another corporation; may undertake a refinancing, recapitalization, leveraged buyout or other economic or financial restructuring; and, with regard to any or all of the above sales, assignments and dispositions, you expressly and specifically waive any claims, demands or damages arising from or related to the loss of said Marks (or any variation thereof) and/or the loss of association with or identification of "LIBC Franchise LLC" as Franchisor. Nothing contained in this Agreement shall require us to remain in the same business or to offer the same products and services, whether or not bearing the Marks, in the event that we exercise our right to assign our rights in this Agreement.

SECTION 12: COVENANTS

12.1 You specifically acknowledge that, pursuant to this Agreement, you will receive valuable training and confidential information, including, without limitation, secret recipes, information regarding the marketing methods and techniques of us and the System. You covenant that during the term of this

Agreement, except as otherwise approved in writing by us, you shall not, either directly or indirectly, for yourself/himself, or through, on behalf of or in conjunction with any person, persons or legal entity:

12.1.1 Divert or attempt to divert any business or client of the Franchised Business to any competitor, by direct or indirect inducement or otherwise, or do or perform, directly or indirectly, any other act injurious or prejudicial to the goodwill associated with the Marks and the System.

12.1.2 Own, maintain, advise, help, invest in, make loans to, be employed by, engage in or have any interest in any restaurant or food service business other than the Franchised Business (including any business operated by you prior to entry into this Agreement), which business is of a character and concept similar to the Café, including a restaurant which offers and sells the same or substantially similar food products (a "Competitive Business").

12.2 You covenant that, except as otherwise approved in writing by us, you shall not, for a continuous and uninterrupted period commencing upon the expiration or termination of this Agreement, and continuing for two (2) years thereafter (and, in case of any violation of this covenant, for two (2) years after the violation ceases), either directly or indirectly, for yourself, or through, on behalf of or in conjunction with any person, persons, partnership or corporation, own, maintain, advise, help, invest in, make loans to, be employed by, engage in or have any interest in any Competitive Business which is located within five (5) miles of any Long Island Bagel Café in the System.

12.3 Subsections 12.1.2 and 12.2 of this Section shall not apply to ownership by you of less than a five percent (5%) beneficial interest in the outstanding equity securities of any company which is registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

12.4 The parties agree that each of the foregoing covenants shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Agreement. If all or any portion of a covenant in this Section 12 is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in any unappealed final decision to which we are a party, you expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant subsumed within the terms of such covenant that imposes the maximum duty permitted by law, as if the resulting covenant were separately stated in and made a part of this Section 12.

12.5 You understand and acknowledge that we shall have the right, in our sole discretion, to reduce the scope of any covenant stated in Sections 12.1 and 12.2 or any portion thereof, without your consent, effective immediately upon receipt by you of written notice thereof, and you agree that you shall comply forthwith with any covenant as so modified, which shall be fully enforceable notwithstanding the provisions of Section 16 hereof.

12.6 You expressly agree that the existence of any claim you may have against us, whether or not arising from this Agreement, shall not constitute a defense to our enforcement of the covenants in this Section 12.

12.7 You acknowledge that any failure to comply with the requirements of this Section 12 would cause us irreparable injury for which no adequate remedy at law may be available, and you hereby accordingly consent to our seeking injunctive relief prohibiting any conduct by you in violation of the terms of this Section 12. We may further avail ourselves of any other legal or equitable rights and remedies which we may have under this Agreement or otherwise.

12.8 During the term of this Agreement, an officer or agent of ours shall have the right to inspect any Café in which you have an interest at reasonable times and during normal business hours to the extent reasonably necessary to determine whether the conditions of this Section 12 are being satisfied. If, by reason

of such inspections or otherwise, we have reason to believe that you are not in full compliance with the terms of this Section, we shall give notice of such default to you, specifying the nature of such default. If you deny that you are in default hereunder, as specified by us, you shall have the burden of establishing that such default does not exist and shall give notice to us of your position within ten (10) days of receipt of the notice from us. Unless you so deny such default, you shall immediately take all steps to cure said default in a manner satisfactory to us.

SECTION 13: NOTICES

Any and all notices required or permitted under this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be personally delivered or mailed by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, to the respective parties at the following addresses unless and until a different address set forth in the introductory paragraph of this Agreement. unless and until a different address has been designated by written notice to the other party.

Any notice by certified or registered mail shall be deemed to have been given at the date and time of mailing.

SECTION 14: INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR AND INDEMNIFICATION

14.1 The parties acknowledge and agree that you shall be an independent contractor and this Agreement does not create a fiduciary relationship between them, and that nothing in this Agreement is intended to constitute either party an agent, legal representative, subsidiary, joint venturer, partner, employee, joint employer or servant of the other for any purpose. You understand and agree that you are and will be an independent contractor under this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement may be interpreted as creating a partnership, joint venture, agency, employment or fiduciary relationship of any kind. Your employees are not our employees. Neither you nor any of your employees whose compensation you pay may in any way, directly or by implication, shall be considered our employee for any purpose, regardless of inclusion in mandated or other insurance coverage, tax or contributions, or requirements pertaining to withholdings, levied or fixed by any city, state or federal governmental agency. We will not have the power to hire or terminate the employment of your employees. You expressly agree, and will never claim otherwise, that our authority under this Agreement to determine that certain of your employees are qualified to perform certain tasks for you does not directly or indirectly vest in us the power to influence the employment terms of any such employee.

You agree that you alone are to exercise day-to-day control over all operations, activities and elements of your business, and that under no circumstance shall we do so or be deemed to do so. You further acknowledge and agree, and will never claim otherwise, that the various restrictions, prohibitions, specifications and procedures of the System which you are required to comply with under this Agreement, whether set forth in our Manual or otherwise, do not directly or indirectly constitute, suggest, infer or imply that we control any aspect or element of the day-to-day operations of your Franchised Business, which you alone control, but only constitute standards you must adhere to when exercising your control of the day-to-day operations of your Franchised Business.

14.2 During the term of this Agreement, you shall hold yourself out to the public as an independent contractor conducting your operations pursuant to the rights granted by us. You agree to take such action as shall be reasonably necessary to that end, including, without limitation, exhibiting a notice of that fact in a conspicuous place on any Café premises established for the purposes hereunder and on all letterhead, business cards, forms, and as further described in the Manual. We reserve the right to specify in writing the content and form of such notice.

You acknowledge and agree that any training we provide for your employees is geared to impart to those employees, with your ultimate authority, the various procedures, protocols, systems and operations of a Long Island Bagel Café and in no fashion reflects any employment relationship between us and such employees. If it is ever asserted that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees in any private or government investigation, action, proceeding, arbitration or other setting, you irrevocably agree to assist us in defending said allegation, appearing at any venue requested by us to testify on our behalf; participating in depositions or other appearances; or preparing affidavits rejecting any assertion that we are the employer, joint employer or co-employer of any of your employees.

14.3 You understand and agree that nothing in this Agreement authorizes you to make any contract, agreement, warranty or representation on our behalf, or to incur any debt or other obligation in our name, and that we assume no liability for, nor shall be deemed liable by reason of, any act or omission of yours or any claim or judgment arising therefrom. You shall indemnify and hold us and our officers, directors, and employees harmless against any and all such claims arising directly or indirectly from, as a result of, or in connection with your activities hereunder, as well as the cost, including reasonable attorneys' fees, of defending against them, except that the foregoing shall not apply to infringement actions regarding the Marks which are caused solely by our actions or actions caused by the negligent acts of us or our agents.

SECTION 15: APPROVALS

15.1 Whenever this Agreement requires our prior approval or consent, you shall make a timely written request to us for such approval or consent, and, except as otherwise provided herein, any approval or consent granted shall be in writing.

15.2 We make no warranties or guarantees upon which you may rely and assume no liability or obligation to you or any third party to which we would not otherwise be subject, by providing any waiver, approval, advise, consent or services to you in connection with this Agreement, or by reason of any neglect, delay or denial of any request therefor.

SECTION 16: NON-WAIVER

No failure of ours to exercise any power reserved to us under this Agreement or to insist upon compliance by you with any obligation or condition in this Agreement, and no custom or practice of the parties at variance with the terms hereof, shall constitute a waiver of our rights to demand exact compliance with the terms of this Agreement. Our waiver of any particular default shall not affect or impair our right with respect to any subsequent default of the same or of a different nature; nor shall any delay, forbearance or omission of ours to exercise any power or right arising out of any breach or default by you of any of the terms, provisions or covenants of this Agreement affect or impair our rights, nor shall such constitute a waiver by us of any rights hereunder or rights to declare any subsequent breach or default.

SECTION 17: SEVERABILITY AND CONSTRUCTION

17.1 Each covenant and provision of this Agreement shall be construed as independent of any other covenant or provision of this Agreement. The provisions of this Agreement shall be deemed severable.

17.2 If all or any portion of a covenant or provision of this Agreement is held unreasonable or unenforceable by a court or agency having valid jurisdiction in a decision to which we are a party, you expressly agree to be bound by any lesser covenant or provision imposing the maximum duty permitted by law which is subsumed within the terms of such covenant or provision, as if that lesser covenant or provision were separately stated in and made a part of this Agreement.

17.3 Nothing in this Agreement shall confer upon any person or legal entity other than us or you, and such of our respective successors and assigns as may be contemplated by Section 11 hereof, any rights or remedies under or by reason of this Agreement.

17.4 All captions in this Agreement are intended solely for the convenience of the parties and none shall be deemed to affect the meaning or construction of any provision hereof.

17.5 All references herein to gender and number shall be construed to include such other gender and number as the context may require, and all acknowledgments, promises, covenants, agreements and obligations herein made or undertaken by you shall be deemed jointly and severally undertaken by all those executing this Agreement on your behalf.

17.6 This Agreement may be executed in multiple copies, each of which shall be deemed an original.

SECTION 18: ENTIRE AGREEMENT

This Agreement, the documents referred to herein and the Attachments attached hereto constitute the entire, full and complete agreement between us and you concerning the subject matter hereof and supersede any and all prior agreements; provided, however, that nothing in this or any related agreement is intended to disclaim the representations made by us in the Disclosure Document that was furnished to you by us. No amendment, change or variance from this Agreement shall be binding on either party unless mutually agreed to by the parties and executed by their authorized officers or agents in writing.

SECTION 19: DISPUTE RESOLUTION; APPLICABLE LAW

19.1 Except to the extent we elect to enforce the provisions of this Agreement by judicial process and injunction in our sole discretion, all disputes, claims and controversies between the parties arising under or in connection with this Agreement or the making, performance or interpretation thereof (including claims of fraud in the inducement and other claims of fraud and the arbitrability of any matter) which have not been settled through negotiation will be settled by binding arbitration within Nassau County, New York, under the authority of the statutes of New York (the "Statutes"). The arbitrator(s) will have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in franchising or distribution law and will have the right to award specific performance of this Agreement. If the parties cannot agree upon a mutually agreeable arbitrator, then the arbitration shall be conducted as per the selection method set forth in the Statutes. The proceedings will be conducted under the commercial arbitration rules of the American Arbitration Association, to the extent such rules are not inconsistent with the provisions of this arbitration provision or the Statutes. The decision of the arbitrator(s) will be final and binding on all parties. This Section will survive termination or non-renewal of this Agreement under any circumstances. Judgment upon the award of the arbitrator(s) may be entered in any court having jurisdiction thereof. During the pendency of any arbitration proceeding, you and we shall fully perform our respective obligations under this Agreement.

19.2 With respect to any claims, controversies or disputes which are not finally resolved through negotiation or arbitration, or as otherwise provided above, you and your owners hereby irrevocably submit themselves to the jurisdiction of the state courts and the Federal District Court nearest to Nassau County, New York. You hereby waive all questions of personal jurisdiction for the purpose of carrying out this provision. You hereby agree that service of process may be made upon any of them in any proceeding relating to or arising out of this Agreement or the relationship created by this Agreement by any means allowed by New York or federal law. You further agree that venue for any proceeding relating to or arising out of this Agreement shall be Nassau County, New York; provided, however, with respect to any action (1) for monies owed, (2) for injunctive or other extraordinary relief or (3) involving possession or

disposition of, or other relief relating to, real property, we may bring such action in any State or Federal District Court which has jurisdiction.

19.3 Except as provided elsewhere in this Agreement (for example, with regard to the applicability of the Federal Arbitration Act, 9 U.S.C. §1 et seq. and the effect of federal preemption of state law by such Act) and except to the extent governed by the United States Trademark Act and other federal laws, the parties agree that this Agreement (including any claims, counter-claims or otherwise by you) and all other matters concerning the parties will be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

19.4 You and we acknowledge that the parties' agreement regarding applicable state law and forum set forth in Sections 19.1, 19.2 and 19.3 above provide each of the parties with the mutual benefit of uniform interpretation of this Agreement and any dispute arising out of this Agreement or the parties' relationship created by this Agreement. You and we further acknowledge the receipt and sufficiency of mutual consideration for such benefit and that each party's agreement regarding applicable state law and choice of forum have been negotiated in good faith and are part of the benefit of the bargain reflected by this Agreement.

19.5 You and we acknowledge that the execution of this Agreement and acceptance of the terms by the parties occurred in Nassau County, New York, and further acknowledge that the performance of certain of your obligations arising under this Agreement, including, but not limited to, the payment of monies due hereunder and the satisfaction of certain training requirements of ours, shall occur in Nassau County, New York.

19.6 You and we hereby waive, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any right to or claim or any punitive, exemplary, incidental, indirect, special, consequential or other damages (including, without limitation, loss of profits) against either party, their officers, directors, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, independent contractors, servants and employees, in their corporate and individual capacities, arising out of any cause whatsoever (whether such cause be based in contract, negligence, strict liability, other tort or otherwise) and agree that in the event of a dispute, either party shall be limited to the recovery of any actual damages sustained by it. If any other term of this Agreement is found or determined to be unconscionable or unenforceable for any reason, the foregoing provisions of waiver by agreement of punitive, exemplary, incidental, indirect, special, consequential or other damages (including, without limitation, loss of profits) shall continue in full force and effect.

19.7 We and you irrevocably waive trial by jury in any action, proceeding, or counterclaim, whether at law or in equity, brought by either of us against the other. Any and all claims and actions arising out of or relating to this Agreement, the relationship of you and us, or your operation of the Franchised Business, brought by either party hereto against the other, whether in arbitration, or a legal action, shall be commenced within two (2) years from the occurrence of the facts giving rise to such claim or action, or such claim or action shall be barred.

19.8 If we are required to enforce this Agreement in a judicial or arbitration proceeding, you shall reimburse us for our costs and expenses, including, without limitation, reasonable accountants', attorneys', attorney assistants', and expert witness fees, costs of investigation and proof of facts, court costs, other litigation expenses and travel and living expenses, whether incurred prior to, in preparation for or in contemplation of the filing of any such proceeding. If we are required to engage legal counsel in connection with any failure by you to comply with this Agreement, you shall reimburse us for any of the above-listed costs and expenses incurred by us.

SECTION 20: TIMELY PERFORMANCE

You hereby acknowledge that your timely development of the Cafés in the Development Area in accordance with the Minimum Performance Schedule is of material importance to us and you. You agree, as a condition of the continuance of the rights granted hereunder, to develop and open Cafés within the Development Area in accordance with the Minimum Performance Schedule, to operate such Cafés pursuant to the terms of the Franchise Agreements and to maintain all such Cafés in operation continuously. We agree to diligently act upon any request of or approval from you and any material delay in your ability to meet the Minimum Performance Schedule which is directly caused by our failure to act diligently upon a request for approval shall not constitute a default hereunder. Further, a failure or delay in performance by any party to this Agreement shall not be a default hereunder if such failure or delay arises out of or results from a Force Majeure, which for purposes of this Agreement shall be defined as fire, flood, earthquake or other natural disasters, or acts of a public enemy, war, rebellion or sabotage. Force Majeure shall not include your lack of financing.

SECTION 21: ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

21.1 YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE SUCCESS OF THE BUSINESS VENTURE CONTEMPLATED BY THIS AGREEMENT INVOLVES SUBSTANTIAL BUSINESS RISKS AND WILL BE TOTALLY AND COMPLETELY DEPENDENT UPON YOUR ABILITY AS AN INDEPENDENT BUSINESSPERSON. WE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM THE MAKING OF, AND YOU ACKNOWLEDGE NOT HAVING RECEIVED, ANY WARRANTY OR GUARANTEE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO THE POTENTIAL VOLUME, PROFITS OR SUCCESS OF THE BUSINESS VENTURE CONTEMPLATED BY THIS AGREEMENT.

21.2 YOU ACKNOWLEDGE HAVING RECEIVED, READ AND UNDERSTOOD THIS AGREEMENT, THE ATTACHMENTS ATTACHED HERETO AND AGREEMENTS RELATING HERETO, IF ANY, AND THE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT DELIVERED SIMULTANEOUSLY HERewith; AND WE HAVE ACCORDED YOU AMPLE TIME AND OPPORTUNITY TO CONSULT WITH ADVISORS OF YOUR OWN CHOOSING ABOUT THE POTENTIAL RISKS OF ENTERING INTO THIS AGREEMENT.

21.3 YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU RECEIVED THE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT REQUIRED BY THE TRADE REGULATION RULE OF THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION AT LEAST FOURTEEN (14) CALENDAR DAYS PRIOR TO THE DATE ON WHICH THIS AGREEMENT WAS EXECUTED OR ANY PAYMENT WAS MADE TO US OR OUR AFFILIATE.

21.4 YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE THAT NEITHER YOU NOR THEY HAVE RELIED UPON ANY EARNINGS CLAIMS, SUCH AS ORAL OR WRITTEN STATEMENTS OR SUGGESTIONS, MADE BY ANY REPRESENTATIVE OF OR ANY OTHER PERSON PURPORTING TO BE ACTING ON OUR BEHALF REGARDING THE POTENTIAL FUTURE SALES, REVENUES OR PROFITS WHICH MAY BE DERIVED FROM OPERATION OF LONG ISLAND BAGEL CAFÉ RESTAURANTS OR DEVELOPMENT OF THE DEVELOPMENT AREA, EXCEPT AS MAY BE INCLUDED IN ITEM 19 OF THE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT HERETOFORE PROVIDED TO YOU.

SECTION 22: EFFECTIVE DATE

This Agreement shall be effective as of the date it is executed by us.

Each of the parties hereto has caused this Agreement to be executed by its duly authorized representative as of the date first above written.

FRANCHISOR:
LIBC FRANCHISE LLC,
a New York limited liability company

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER:

By:_____

Name:_____

Title:_____

**LIBC Franchise LLC
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT 1
CERTIFICATION BY MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER**

The undersigned, personally and as Multi-Unit Developer does hereby certify that he/she has conducted an independent investigation of the business contemplated by this Multi-Unit Development Agreement and the LIBC Franchise LLC Franchise Agreement, and that the decision to execute the Multi-Unit Development Agreement was based entirely upon the independent investigation by the undersigned; and the undersigned further certifies that he/she has not relied upon, in any way, any claims regarding potential sales, income, or earnings to be derived from the business contemplated by the Franchise Agreement and Multi-Unit Development Agreement, and has not relied upon any claims regarding past or current sales, income or earnings of Franchisor-operated “Long Island Bagel Café” Cafés, except as may be included in Item 19 of the Franchise Disclosure Document heretofore provided to Multi-Unit Developer. The undersigned further certifies that he/she understands the risks involved in this investment and LIBC Franchise LLC makes no representation or guaranty, explicit or implied, that the Multi-Unit Developer will be successful or will recoup his/her investment.

The undersigned has signed, sealed and delivered this Certificate this day of _____.

LIBC Franchise LLC
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT

ATTACHMENT 2
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE SCHEDULE

The Agreement authorizes and obliges Multi-Unit Developer to establish and operate _____ () “Long Island Bagel Café” Cafés pursuant to a Franchise Agreement for each Café. The following is Multi-Unit Developer’s Minimum Performance Schedule:

Minimum Cumulative Number
of Franchise Agreements for
Cafés to be located
and Operating
Within the Development Area

By this Date

Total: _____

The Minimum Performance Schedule shall be deemed completed, and this Agreement shall expire, upon the opening of the final Café to be developed pursuant to this Agreement.

APPROVED:
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

**LIBC Franchise LLC
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPMENT AGREEMENT**

**ATTACHMENT 3
DEVELOPMENT AREA**

The following describes the Development Area within which Multi-Unit Developer may locate Long Island Bagel Cafés under this Agreement:

APPROVED:
MULTI-UNIT DEVELOPER

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

**Exhibit D to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

LIBC Franchise, LLC

Financial Statements

With Independent Auditor's Report Thereon

FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020





Independent Auditor's Report

To the members of LIBC Franchise, LLC

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of LIBC Franchise, LLC, which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 2021 and 2020, and the related statements of operations and members' equity changes and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes to the financial statements.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of LIBC Franchise, LLC as of December 31, 2021 and 2020, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (GAAS). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are required to be independent of LIBC Franchise, LLC and to meet our other ethical responsibilities, in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to our audits. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Responsibilities of Management for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, and for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is required to evaluate whether there are conditions or events, considered in the aggregate, that raise substantial doubt about LIBC Franchise, LLC's ability to continue as a going concern for one year after the date that the financial statements are issued.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance but is not absolute assurance and therefore is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control. Misstatements are considered material if there is a substantial likelihood that, individually or in the aggregate, they would influence the judgment made by a reasonable user based on the financial statements.

In performing an audit in accordance with GAAS, we:

- Exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audits.
- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, and design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks. Such procedures include examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audits in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of LIBC Franchise, LLC's internal control. Accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluate the overall presentation of the financial statements.
- Conclude whether, in our judgment, there are conditions or events, considered in the aggregate, that raise substantial doubt about LIBC Franchise, LLC's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.

We are required to communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audits, significant audit findings, and certain internal control-related matters that we identified during the audits.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Miller CPA, PLLC", is written over the typed name.

Miller CPA, PLLC
Murfreesboro, Tennessee
March 30, 2022

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
BALANCE SHEETS
DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

	<u>2021</u>	<u>2020</u>
CURRENT ASSETS		
Cash and equivalents	\$ 4,395	\$ 22,932
Accounts receivable, net	110,051	34,796
Contract asset	<u>15,400</u>	<u>12,950</u>
Total current assets	129,846	70,678
OTHER ASSETS		
Due from members	2,732	5,001
Other asset	11,200	6,700
Intangible asset, net	<u>5,697</u>	<u>6,342</u>
Total other assets	<u>19,629</u>	<u>18,043</u>
TOTAL ASSETS	<u>\$ 149,475</u>	<u>\$ 88,721</u>
LIABILITIES AND MEMBERS' EQUITY		
CURRENT LIABILITIES		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$ 20,345	\$ 22,220
MEMBERS' EQUITY	<u>129,130</u>	<u>66,501</u>
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND MEMBERS'		
EQUITY	<u>\$ 149,475</u>	<u>\$ 88,721</u>

See accompanying notes to financial statements and independent auditor's report.

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND MEMBERS' EQUITY
FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

REVENUE	2021	2020
Royalties	\$ 93,870	\$ 31,923
Franchise	<u>2,450</u>	<u>12,950</u>
Total revenue	96,320	44,873
OPERATING EXPENSES		
Selling, general and administrative expenses	<u>66,072</u>	<u>76,773</u>
Net operating income (loss)	30,248	(31,900)
OTHER INCOME		
Interest	<u>11,580</u>	<u>2,873</u>
Net income (loss)	41,828	(29,027)
Members' equity - beginning of year	66,501	481,361
Members' contributions	35,310	100,000
Members' distributions	<u>(14,509)</u>	<u>(485,833)</u>
Members' equity - end of year	<u>\$ 129,130</u>	<u>\$ 66,501</u>

See accompanying notes to financial statements and independent auditor's report.

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES	<u>2021</u>	<u>2020</u>
Net income (loss)	\$ 41,828	\$ (29,027)
Adjustments to reconcile net income (loss) to net cash used in operating activities:		
Amortization	645	108
Increase in operating assets:		
Accounts receivable	(75,255)	(34,796)
Contract asset	(2,450)	(12,950)
Other asset	(4,500)	(6,700)
Increase (decrease) in operating liabilities:		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	<u>(1,875)</u>	<u>9,656</u>
Net cash used in operating activities	(41,607)	(73,709)
 CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES		
Increase due from members and related entity	2,269	376,793
Members' contributions	35,310	100,000
Members' distributions	<u>(14,509)</u>	<u>(485,833)</u>
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	<u>23,070</u>	<u>(9,040)</u>
Net decrease in cash and equivalents	(18,537)	(82,749)
Cash and equivalents at beginning of year	<u>22,932</u>	<u>105,681</u>
Cash and equivalents at end of year	<u>\$ 4,395</u>	<u>\$ 22,932</u>

See accompanying notes to financial statements and independent auditor's report.

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

NOTE A—NATURE OF BUSINESS AND SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Nature of Business

LIBC Franchise, LLC (the “Company”) is a New York limited liability company (L.L.C.) with its principal office in Long Island, New York. The Company was founded in 2019 to engage in selling license and franchise agreements of “Long Island bagel cafe.” (LIBC). LIBC is a casual café that sells made-from-scratch bagels, pastries and other approved foods and beverages.

Use of Estimates

Management uses estimates and assumptions in preparing these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. These estimates and assumptions affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements, and the reported revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could vary from the estimates that were used.

Accrual Basis

The financial statements of the Company have been prepared on the accrual basis of accounting.

Cash and Equivalents

For purposes of the statements of cash flows, the Company considers all highly liquid, unrestricted investments with an initial maturity of three months or less to be cash or equivalents.

Accounts Receivable, Net

Accounts receivable consist of royalty fees, brand development fees, software fees and interest which are stated at the amount management expects to collect. Royalty fees and brand development fees are required to be paid on a weekly basis. Software fees are required to be paid on a monthly basis. The Company charges interest at 9% on past due receivable balances. Any payment not received when due is considered past due. Generally, the Company does not require collateral or other security to support accounts receivable.

The franchisee is owned by one of the members of the Company. The accounts receivable balance is due from the franchisee which is a related entity by common ownership.

The Company estimates an allowance for doubtful accounts based on factors surrounding the credit risk of specific licensees or franchisees, historical trends and other information. As of December 31, 2021 and 2020 management estimated the allowance for doubtful accounts to be \$-0-.

Intangible Asset, Net

The intangible asset consist of website costs for www.libcfranchise.com is reported at cost. The intangible asset is amortized using the straight-line method over the estimated economic life. The Company has determined the website has an economic life of 10 years in line with the franchisee agreements. The intangible asset is subject to an annual impairment test for impairment. During the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020 no impairment charges have been determined necessary.

For income tax purposes the Company uses an accelerated method of amortization.

Revenue Recognition

The Company recognizes revenue based on FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 606, Revenue From Contracts with Customers (“ASC 606”).

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

**NOTE A—NATURE OF BUSINESS AND SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES
(CONTINUED)**

Revenue Recognition

Royalties consist of royalties and brand development fees which are calculated based on a percentage of gross revenue over the term of the franchise agreement.

Franchise revenue consist primarily of franchisee fees earned through the franchise agreements entered into by the Company. Under franchise agreements, the Company provides certain specific performance obligations: 1) site evaluation, set up and consultation to establish the site location, 2) periodic visits and evaluations, 3) management and operations advice and on-going support, 4) training and education and 5) a franchise license. These services are highly interrelated and dependent upon the franchise license. Management of the Company has allocated the franchise revenue earned to the specific performance obligations.

Management has estimated an allocation of the revenue based on the timing of the specific performance obligations to be provided over the life of the contract. The revenue for each specific performance obligation is allocated to each year of the contract based on services and value provided to the franchisee under the franchise contract.

Each franchise contract matures 10 years from the initial start-date. The franchise contracts renew after 10 years without further consideration.

Payments received in excess of revenue recognition under ASC 606 is recorded as a contract liability on the balance sheet until the revenue is recognized and revenue recognition under ASC 606 is recorded as a contract asset on the balance sheet until the payment is received. As of December 31, 2021 and 2020 the contract asset totaled \$2,450 and \$12,950, respectively.

Income Tax

The Company is a domestic limited liability company (L.L.C.) and is taxed as a partnership. Income and expenses are reported on the members' income tax returns therefore a provision for income taxes has not been included in the financial statements.

The Company evaluates all significant tax positions as required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. As of December 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company does not believe that it has taken any positions that would require the recording of any additional tax liability nor does it believe that there are any unrealized tax benefits that would either increase or decrease within the next year. It is the Company's policy to recognize any interest and penalties in selling, general and administrative expenses.

The federal and state tax returns for the Company are subject to examination by the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS"), generally for three years after they are filed, and to state tax authorities generally for five years after they are filed. The Company began operations in 2019, therefore, all tax returns since inception in 2019 are subject to examination.

Advertising Costs

During the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020 the Company expenses all advertising costs as they are incurred and totaled \$25,140 and \$18,697, respectively.

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

NOTE B – PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENTS

Certain prior period adjustments were necessary for the financial statements to be in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. These include adjustments to due from members and related entity and accounts payable.

A reconciliation of members' equity is as follows:

Members' equity as of December 31, 2019	\$ 105,681
Due from members' and related entities	381,794
Accounts payable	<u>(6,114)</u>
Member's equity as of December 31, 2019	<u>\$ 481,361</u>

NOTE C – INTANGIBLE ASSET

The intangible asset consist of the following as of December 31, 2021 and 2020:

	<u>2021</u>	<u>2020</u>
Website costs	\$ 6,450	\$ 6,450
Less: Accumulated amortization	<u>(753)</u>	<u>(108)</u>
Intangible asset, net	<u>\$ 5,697</u>	<u>\$ 6,342</u>

As of December 31, 2021 and 2020 amortization expense totaled \$645 and \$108, respectively.

NOTE D – DUE FROM MEMBERS AND RELATED ENTITIES

During the course of business Company provides additional working capital to members or related entities by common ownership based on working capital needs which are recorded as due from members and related entities. As of December 31, 2021 and 2020 due from members totaled \$2,732 and \$5,001, respectively.

NOTE E – FRANCHISES

Franchise revenue for the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020 totaled \$2,450 and \$12,950, respectively.

The franchise and license outlet for LIBC Franchise, LLC in operation, franchise and license unit sold or closed during the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020 are as follows:

	<u>2021</u>	<u>2020</u>
Franchise and license outlets in operation	1	1
Franchise and license units sold	0	1
Franchise and license units closed	0	0

NOTE F – CONCENTRATION OF RISK

The Company has one franchisee. Should economic or social events transpire to bring hardship to the industry and local economies the Company may find it difficult to continue operations.

LIBC FRANCHISE, LLC
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
DECEMBER 31, 2021 AND 2020

NOTE F – CONCENTRATION OF RISK (CONTINUED)

The Company may at times be subject to credit risk to its cash and equivalent account, which are placed in a high credit-quality financial institution. The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“FDIC”) offers coverage up to \$250,000 for substantially all depository accounts. As of December 31, 2021 and 2020 the Company did not have deposits in excess of the FDIC limits.

NOTE G – CASH FLOW INFORMATION

The Company did not have any cash disbursements for interest or income taxes during the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020. During the year ended December 31, 2020 the Company entered into non-cash investing and financing activity which has been excluded from the statement of cash flows include the payment for the intangible asset for \$6,450 which has increased accounts payable. There were no non-cash investing and financing activities during the year ended December 31, 2021.

NOTE H – SUBSEQUENT EVENT REVIEW

Subsequent events have been evaluated through March 30, 2022, which is the date the financial statements were available to be issued. Through this date, management has determined that the Company did not have any material recognizable or non-recognizable subsequent events.

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

Financial Statement

December 31, 2019



LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

Table of Contents

Independent Auditors' Report dated February 5, 2020

Financial Statement	Page
Balance sheet	1
Notes to Financial Statement	2



Independent Auditors' Report

To the Members of LIBC Franchise LLC:

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of LIBC Franchise LLC as of December 31, 2019, and the related notes.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statement

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of this financial statement in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditors' Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statement based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statement is free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statement. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statement, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statement in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statement.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the balance sheet referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of LIBC Franchise LLC as of December 31, 2019, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Garden City, New York
February 5, 2020

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

Balance Sheet

December 31, 2019

Assets

Cash	\$ 105,681
------	------------

Liabilities and Members' Equity

Members' equity	\$ 105,681
-----------------	------------

LIBC FRANCHISE LLC

Notes to Financial Statement

December 31, 2019

1. Organization

LIBC Franchise LLC (“the Company”) was organized in March 2019 for the purpose of operating as a franchisor and licensor of bagel specialty restaurants located throughout Long Island, NY. As of December 2019, no Franchise restaurant locations have yet to be opened. The Company will derive its income from franchise and license fees. The Company shall continue in existence until termination and dissolution as outlined in the Limited Liability Operating Agreement.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of presentation – The financial statement has been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”).

Cash and cash equivalents – The Company considers cash and cash equivalents to include all cash and short-term, highly liquid investments that are readily convertible to known amounts of cash and have original maturities of three months or less and are stated at cost, which approximates fair value.

Members’ Equity – Members’ equity consists of Members’ contributions net of distributions in the amount of \$105,681.

3. Subsequent Events

The Company evaluated subsequent events February 5, 2020, the date this financial statement was available to be issued. There were no material subsequent events that required recognition or additional disclosure in this financial statement.



**Exhibit E to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

TABLE OF CONTENTS OF CONFIDENTIAL OPERATIONS MANUAL

Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Operations Manual Table of Contents

Introduction

Mission Statement

History of Long Island Bagel Café

Long Island Bagel Café Timeline

Welcome Letter:

The Long Island Bagel Café Management Team

Randy Narod – Chief Executive Officer

Joseph Anzalone – Chief Operating Officer

Erica Benedetto – Chief Business Development Officer

Michael Tiseo – Chief Financial Officer

Leonard Cagno – Chief Marketing Officer

Joseph Feldman – Director of Operations

Michael Durr – Director of Franchisee Field Support

Juan Reyes – Director of Food Services

Services Provided to Franchisees

Initial Training

Site Selection Assistance

Plans and Specifications

Initial Marketing Plan

Initial Onsite Assistance

Ongoing Training and Support

Product Testing, Research and Approved Suppliers

Marketing Materials and Sales Aids

Social Media Marketing

Franchisee Councils

Corporate Website

Franchisee Responsibilities

Responsibilities to Customers

Responsibilities to Your Employees

Responsibilities to Fellow Franchisees

Responsibilities to Long Island Bagel Café

Paying Other Fees.....

Initial Training.....

Additional Training

Ongoing Training and Meetings

Transfer Fee.....

Renewal.....

Company Wide or Regional Meetings

Late Payment.....

Audit.....

Supplier and Product Approval

Refurbishing

Product Purchases.....

Prohibited Product / Service Fine.....

Relocation

Management Fee

Liquidated Damages.....

Indemnification

Insurance.....

Attorney's Fees.....

Visits from the Home Office.....

Pre-Opening Procedures

Pre-Opening Timeline and Checklist.....

Pre-Opening Timeline & Checklist.....

After Signing the Franchise Disclosure Document

After Signing the Lease

After Selecting a Contractor

While Build Out Process is Taking Place

6 Weeks Before Opening.....

4 Weeks Before Opening.....

2 Weeks Before Opening.....

1 Week Before Training.....

Opening Day

Establishment of A Legal Business Entity	
Selecting Your Site	
Site Selection Criteria	
Market Analysis	
Gaining Site Selection Acceptance	
Lease Considerations.....	
Negotiating a Lease	
Step 1 – Be Prepared	
Step 2 – Research the Area	
Step 3 – What you will need to operate a Long Island Bagel Café	
Step 4 – What you can expect from the leasing agent.....	
Step 5 – Conduct a thorough examination of proposed site.....	
Step 6 – Points of discussion for First Negotiations	
Building Out Your Long Island Bagel Cafe	
Long Island Bagel Café Design Criteria	
Working with an Architect	
Sample Floor Plan.....	
Sample Equipment Plan	
Selecting a Contractor	
Final Details Completed	
Finish Miscellaneous Projects	
Insurance.....	
General Liability Insurance	
Property Insurance	
Coverage Required by Contractors	
Insurance Required once your location has opened	
General Liability Insurance	
Property coverage	
Worker’s Compensation.....	
Some other coverages that should be considered	
Credit Cards.....	
Bank	
Neighbors.....	

Coming Soon Banner/Sign	
Office	
Cleaning Supplies & Operational Supplies.....	
Press Release.....	
Required List of Equipment and Supplies	
List of Major Equipment.....	
Obtaining Required Licenses/Permits	
Contracting with Utilities & Required Services	
Setting Up Bank Accounts.....	
Accounts to Open.....	
General Operation Account.....	
Payroll Account	
Procuring Required Insurance Policies	
Friends & Family Run Through	
Conducting a Grand Opening	
Planning.....	
<i>Human Resources</i>	
<u>Employee Relations Philosophy</u>	
<u>Employment At-Will</u>	
<u>ADA Americans with Disabilities Act</u>	
<u>Record Keeping Requirements.....</u>	
<u>How Employees are Counted</u>	
<u>Wage and Labor Laws</u>	
<u>What the FLSA Requires</u>	
<u>Restaurants and Fast Food Establishments Under the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA)</u>	
<u>Characteristics</u>	
<u>Coverage.....</u>	
<u>Requirements.....</u>	
<u>Food Credit.....</u>	
<u>Tips</u>	
<u>Youth Minimum Wage</u>	
<u>Youth Employment.....</u>	
<u>Paying for Uniforms.....</u>	

Current Standards	
Exceptions	
What the FLSA Does Not Require	
FLSA Minimum Wage Poster	
Laws Regarding Harassment	
Sexual Harassment	
Racial & Ethnic Harassment	
Unlawful Actions	
Maternity and Paternity Discrimination	
Religious Accommodation	
Undue Hardship Claims	
Immigration Reform/Control Act	
I-9 Form	
Prerequisites for employees	
Documentation for proof of identity or employment authorization	
List A	
List B	
List C	
Reverification	
Retention	
Penalties/Fines	
Types of discrimination	
Citizenship or immigration status discrimination	
National origin discrimination	
Unfair documentary practices	
Retaliation	
Profile of the Ideal Employee	
Job Descriptions	
The Store Owner (Franchisee) / Manager	
Manager	
Bagel Baker	
Counter Staff	
Kitchen Staff	

Hiring	
<u>Job Postings</u>	
<u>Hiring Tips</u>	
<u>Employment of Minors</u>	
<u>Employment of Relatives</u>	
<u>Recruitment - Spreading the Word</u>	
<u>Recruitment Methods</u>	
<u>Screening</u>	
<u>Screening Guidelines</u>	
<u>The Interview Process</u>	
<u>Screening Checklist</u>	
<u>Interviewing Guidelines</u>	
<u>Key Steps in Interviewing:</u>	
<u>Interview questions</u>	
<u>Sample Open-Ended Interview Questions</u>	
<u>The Working Interview</u>	
<u>Reference Checks</u>	
<u>Background Checks</u>	
<u>Job Offer</u>	
<u>Hiring on a Probationary Period</u>	
<u>Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC)</u>	
<u>EEOC Guidelines in Hiring Employees</u>	
<u>EEOC-Enforced Laws</u>	
<u>EEOC Charge Processing Procedures</u>	
<u>Filing Process</u>	
<u>EEOC Mediation</u>	
<u>Benefits of Mediation</u>	
<u>EEOC Remedies</u>	
<u>EEOC Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act</u>	
<u>EEOC Technical Assistance</u>	
<u>Informal Guidance</u>	
<u>Publications</u>	
<u>Employee Orientation</u>	

On-Boarding Procedures	.....
<u>Step 1: Forms and Orientation</u>	.....
<u>Required Forms</u>	.....
<u>Step 2: Policies and Benefits</u>	.....
<u>Step 3: Overview of Operation</u>	.....
Training	.....
<u>Training Tips</u>	.....
<u>Training Principles</u>	.....
<u>Initial Training</u>	.....
<u>Explain your policy on customer relations.</u>	.....
<u>Review the proper operations of your cash register.</u>	.....
<u>Stress the importance of treating customers as guests.</u>	.....
<u>Review policies on checking and stocking supplies, cleaning chores, getting work done on time.</u>	.....
<u>Be informal when managing your employees. Have an open forum for questions and suggestions from them.</u>	.....
<u>Ongoing Training</u>	.....
Time Tracking Procedures	.....
Uniform and Dress Code	.....
Performance Evaluations	.....
<u>Evaluation Process</u>	.....
<u>Review Meeting</u>	.....
Progressive Discipline	.....
<u>Warning Notice</u>	.....
Off-Boarding Procedures	.....
<u>Termination/Separation</u>	.....
<u>Reasons for Termination</u>	.....
<u>Steps to finalize a termination:</u>	.....
Resignation	.....
<u>Steps to finalize a resignation:</u>	.....
<u>Removing an Employee from the LIBC Network</u>	.....
Employment Updates	.....
Personnel Policies	.....
Employee Handbook	.....

Daily Operating Procedures

Suggested Hours of Operation

Creating the Long Island Bagel Café Environment

Customer Service.....

Customer Service Philosophy

Customer Service Basics:

Promoting Customer Service Internally

Building Loyalty

Handling Complaints

Handling Refund Requests

Tipping.....

Daily Procedures.....

The Manager's Role.....

Uniform Requirements.....

Opening

Baker Responsibilities.....

Morning Counter Attendant Responsibilities.....

Morning Manager Responsibilities.....

Kitchen Staff Responsibilities

Cleaner Responsibilities

Mid-Shift.....

Shift Change (approximately 2:00pm) Counter Attendant Responsibilities:.....

Afternoon Manager Responsibilities:.....

Ongoing Counter Attendant Responsibilities:

Restocking

Restocking Guidelines

Cleaning.....

Closing

Closing Tasks:

Operating the Long Island Bagel Café Retail Area.....

1. Retail Sales -

2. Catering Sales

Residential Catering

Corporate Catering	
Merchandising the Store	
Process for Handling Retail Orders	
Process for Handling Online Orders	
Packaging “To-Go” Orders	
Packaging “Dine In” Orders	
Greeting Customers	
Greeting Customers on the Phone	
Thanking the Customer	
Entering Orders Using the POS System	
Proper Payment Handling	
Cash Control Guidelines	
Accepting Credit Cards	
Accepting Gift Cards	
Third Party Delivery Platforms	
The Sales Plan	
Catering	
Food Preparation Procedures	
Baking Bagels	
Using the Slicer	
Using the Griddle	
Bagel Butter and Cream Cheese Station	
Panini Station	
Coffee Station	
Coffee Fixing Station	
Baked Goods	
Presentation of Salads in the Cases	
Temperature Standards and Consistency	
Food Safety and Sanitation	
Sanitation Guidelines	
Food Allergies	
Safe Product Handling	
Types of Contamination	

Cross Contamination

Biological Hazard

Staphylococcus

Salmonellosis

Clostridium Perfringens (E. Coli)

Botulism

Hepatitis Virus A

Cleaning and Maintenance

Pest Control/Prevention

Floors

Restrooms

Restroom Checklist

Sidewalks

Care of Cleaning Equipment

Fire Extinguishers

Equipment Maintenance

Preventative Maintenance

Maintenance Schedule

Bagel Oven Cleaning

Safety and Security

Reasons for Precautions

General Safety Guidelines

Accident Reporting and Investigation

Investigation Procedure

Fire Safety

Robbery

Burglary

Marketing

Marketing Plan

Developing Your Marketing Plan

Promoting LIBC in Your Area

Use of Media

Internet	.....
Social Media	.....
Instagram	.....
Twitter	.....
Facebook	.....
Review Websites	.....
Yelp	.....
Google	.....
TripAdvisor	.....
Print	.....
Direct Mail	.....
Billboard Advertising	.....
Sampling	.....
In-Shop Promotion	.....
Radio	.....
Word of Mouth	.....
Community Involvement	.....
Using Marketing Materials	.....
Guidelines for Using the Long Island Bagel Cafe Marks	.....
Signage and Logo Specifications	.....
Business Cards, Letterhead & Envelopes	.....
Interior Signage	.....
Temporary Signage	.....
Exterior Signage	.....
Public Relations	.....
Required Advertising Expenditures	.....
System-wide Advertising Contribution	.....
Local Advertising Requirement	.....
Grand Opening Campaign	.....
Obtaining Advertising Approval	.....
Accounting	
In Store Bank Set up	.....

Daily Sales & Cash Report .....	.....
Cash Drawer Set Up .....	.....
Back of the house safe .....	.....
Daily Procedures.....	.....
Payroll Procedures.....	.....
Employee Packets-see schedule xyz.....	.....
Weekly Procedures-see schedule xyz.....	.....
Ordering-see schedule xyz .....	.....
Monthly Procedures-discuss in Franchise Meeting.....	.....

**Exhibit F to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

LIST OF FRANCHISEES BY STATE

NEW YORK:

Scarsdale
Michael Stern
365 Central Park Avenue
Scarsdale, New York 10583
(914) 607-7172

FRANCHISEES SIGNED, NOT OPENED
(As of December 31, 2021)

None

FORMER FRANCHISEES
(As of December 31, 2021)

that had an outlet terminated, canceled, not renewed, or otherwise voluntarily or involuntarily ceased to do business under the Franchise Agreement during the most recently completed fiscal year or has not communicated with the franchisor within the 10 weeks preceding the Issuance Date of this Disclosure Document:

None

If you buy this franchise, your contact information may be disclosed to other buyers when you leave the system.

**Exhibit G to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

STATE ADDENDA

ADDENDUM REQUIRED BY THE DEPARTMENT OF LAW OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK

1. The following information is added to the cover page of the Franchise Disclosure Document:

INFORMATION COMPARING FRANCHISORS IS AVAILABLE. CALL THE STATE ADMINISTRATORS LISTED IN EXHIBIT A OR YOUR PUBLIC LIBRARY FOR SOURCES OF INFORMATION. REGISTRATION OF THIS FRANCHISE BY NEW YORK STATE DOES NOT MEAN THAT NEW YORK STATE RECOMMENDS IT OR HAS VERIFIED THE INFORMATION IN THIS FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT. IF YOU LEARN THAT ANYTHING IN THE FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT IS UNTRUE, CONTACT THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LAW, INVESTOR PROTECTION BUREAU, 28 LIBERTY STREET, 21ST FLOOR, NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10005. THE FRANCHISOR MAY, IF IT CHOOSES, NEGOTIATE WITH YOU ABOUT ITEMS COVERED IN THE FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT. HOWEVER, THE FRANCHISOR CANNOT USE THE NEGOTIATING PROCESS TO PREVAIL UPON A PROSPECTIVE FRANCHISEE TO ACCEPT TERMS WHICH ARE LESS FAVORABLE THAN THOSE SET FORTH IN THIS FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT.

2. The following is added at the end of Item 3:

Except as provided above, with regard to the franchisor, its predecessor, a person identified in Item 2, or an affiliate offering franchises under the franchisor's principal trademark:

- A. No such party has an administrative, criminal or civil action pending against that person alleging: a felony, a violation of a franchise, antitrust, or securities law, fraud, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, unfair or deceptive practices, or comparable civil or misdemeanor allegations.
- B. No such party has pending actions, other than routine litigation incidental to the business, which are significant in the context of the number of franchisees and the size, nature or financial condition of the franchise system or its business operations.
- C. No such party has been convicted of a felony or pleaded nolo contendere to a felony charge or, within the 10-year period immediately preceding the application for registration, has been convicted of or pleaded nolo contendere to a misdemeanor charge or has been the subject of a civil action alleging: violation of a franchise, antifraud, or securities law; fraud; embezzlement; fraudulent conversion or misappropriation of property; or unfair or deceptive practices or comparable allegations.
- D. No such party is subject to a currently effective injunctive or restrictive order or decree relating to the franchise, or under a Federal, State, or Canadian franchise, securities, antitrust, trade regulation or trade practice law, resulting from a concluded or pending action or proceeding brought by a public agency; or is subject to any currently effective order of any national securities association or national securities exchange, as defined in the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, suspending or expelling such person from membership in such association or exchange; or is subject to a currently effective injunctive or restrictive order relating to any other business activity as a result of an action brought by a public agency or department, including, without limitation, actions affecting a license as a real estate broker or sales agent.

3. The following is added to the end of Item 4:

Neither the franchisor, its affiliate, its predecessor, officers, or general partner during the 10-year period immediately before the date of the offering circular: (a) filed as debtor (or had filed against it) a petition to start an action under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code; (b) obtained a discharge of its debts under the bankruptcy code; or (c) was a principal officer of a company or a general partner in a partnership that either filed as a debtor (or had filed against it) a petition to start an action under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or that obtained a discharge of its debts under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code during or within 1 year after that officer or general partner of the franchisor held this position in the company or partnership.

4. The following is added to the end of Item 5:

The initial franchise fee constitutes part of our general operating funds and will be used as such in our discretion.

5. The following is added to the end of the “Summary” sections of Item 17(c), titled “Requirements for franchisee to renew or extend,” and Item 17(m), entitled “Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer”:

However, to the extent required by applicable law, all rights you enjoy and any causes of action arising in your favor from the provisions of Article 33 of the General Business Law of the State of New York and the regulations issued thereunder shall remain in force; it being the intent of this proviso that the non-waiver provisions of General Business Law Sections 687.4 and 687.5 be satisfied.

6. The following language replaces the “Summary” section of Item 17(d), titled “Termination by franchisee”:

You may terminate the agreement on any grounds available by law.

7. The following is added to the end of the “Summary” section of Item 17(j), titled “Assignment of contract by franchisor”:

However, no assignment will be made except to an assignee who in good faith and judgment of the franchisor, is willing and financially able to assume the franchisor’s obligations under the Franchise Agreement.

8. The following is added to the end of the “Summary” sections of Item 17(v), titled “Choice of forum”, and Item 17(w), titled “Choice of law”:

The foregoing choice of law should not be considered a waiver of any right conferred upon the franchisor or upon the franchisee by Article 33 of the General Business Law of the State of New York.

STATE EFFECTIVE DATES

The following states require that the Franchise Disclosure Document be registered or filed with the state, or be exempt from registration: California, Hawaii, Illinois, Indiana, Maryland, Michigan, Minnesota, New York, North Dakota, Rhode Island, South Dakota, Virginia, Washington and Wisconsin.

This Franchise Disclosure Document is registered, on file or exempt from registrations in the following states having franchise disclosure laws, with the following effective dates:

<u>STATE</u>	<u>EFFECTIVE DATE</u>
New York	Pending

Other states may require registration, filing, or exemption of a franchise under other laws, such as those that regulate the offer and sale of business opportunities or seller-assisted marketing plans.

**Exhibit H to the
Long Island Bagel Café Franchise Disclosure Document**

RECEIPT

This Franchise Disclosure Document summarizes certain provisions of the Franchise Agreement and other information in plain language. Read this Franchise Disclosure Document and all exhibits carefully.

If LIBC Franchise, LLC offers you a franchise, it must provide this Disclosure Document to you 14 calendar-days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make a payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.

New York requires you to receive this Franchise Disclosure Document at the earlier of the first personal meeting or 10 business days before the execution of the franchise or other agreement or the payment of any consideration that relates to the franchise relationship.

If LIBC Franchise, LLC does not deliver this Disclosure Document on time or if it contains a false or misleading statement, or a material omission, a violation of federal and state law may have occurred and should be reported to the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580 and to your state authority listed on Exhibit A.

The name and principal business address and telephone number of each franchise seller offering the franchise is:

Randy Narod 1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350 Uniondale, New York 11556 516-279-2300	Ken Stein 185 Roslyn Road Roslyn Heights, New York 11577 516-626-2211	Stuart Levenberg 185 Roslyn Road Roslyn Heights, New York 11577 516-626-2211
--	--	---

Issuance Date: April 26, 2022

I received a Disclosure Document dated _____ that included the following Exhibits:

EXHIBIT A: List of State Franchise Administrators and Agents for Service of Process
EXHIBIT B: Franchise Agreement with Attachments 1-10 and Addendum.
EXHIBIT C: Multi-Unit Development Agreement
EXHIBIT D: Financial Statements of LIBC Franchise, LLC
EXHIBIT E: Operations Manual Table of Contents
EXHIBIT F: Outlets as of the date of this Disclosure Document
EXHIBIT G: State Addenda
EXHIBIT H: Receipt

Date Received: _____ DATE: _____
(If other than date signed)

(Signature of recipient)

(Printed name of recipient)

Legal residence address

**Please return signed receipt to LIBC Franchise, LLC,
1 RXR Plaza, Suite 350
Uniondale, New York 11556**

EXHIBIT H

RECEIPT

This Franchise Disclosure Document summarizes certain provisions of the Franchise Agreement and other information in plain language. Read this Franchise Disclosure Document and all exhibits carefully.

If LIBC Franchise, LLC offers you a franchise, it must provide this Disclosure Document to you 14 calendar-days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make a payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.

New York requires you to receive this Franchise Disclosure Document at the earlier of the first personal meeting or 10 business days before the execution of the franchise or other agreement or the payment of any consideration that relates to the franchise relationship.

If LIBC Franchise, LLC does not deliver this Disclosure Document on time or if it contains a false or misleading statement, or a material omission, a violation of federal and state law may have occurred and should be reported to the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580 and to your state authority listed on Exhibit A.

The name and principal business address and telephone number of each franchise seller offering the franchise is:

Randy Narod 1 RXX Plaza, Suite 350 Uniondale, New York 11556 516-279-2300	Ken Stein 185 Roslyn Road Roslyn Heights, New York 11577 516-626-2211	Stuart Levenberg 185 Roslyn Road Roslyn Heights, New York 11577 516-626-2211
--	--	---

Issuance Date: April 26, 2022

I received a Disclosure Document dated _____ that included the following Exhibits:

EXHIBIT A: List of State Franchise Administrators and Agents for Service of Process
EXHIBIT B: Franchise Agreement with Attachments 1-10 and Addendum.
EXHIBIT C: Multi-Unit Development Agreement
EXHIBIT D: Financial Statements of LIBC Franchise, LLC
EXHIBIT E: Operations Manual Table of Contents
EXHIBIT F: Outlets as of the date of this Disclosure Document
EXHIBIT G: State Addenda
EXHIBIT H: Receipt

Date Received: _____ DATE: _____
(If other than date signed)

(Signature of recipient)

(Printed name of recipient)

Legal residence address

KEEP FOR YOUR RECORDS